

Xenophon's Anabasis III

Greek Text with Facing Vocabulary and
Commentary

April 2020

Beta Edition

Geoffrey Steadman

Xenophon's *Anabasis* Book III
Greek Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

Beta Edition

© 2020 by Geoffrey Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work freely under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

The Greek text for the *Anabasis* Book III is taken from the Greek edition by E. C. Marchant published by Oxford University Press in 1904.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9991884-9-1

Published by Geoffrey Steadman
Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman, GFS Porson, New Athena Unicode

geoffreysteadman@gmail.com

Xenophon's *Anabasis* III Core Vocabulary (8 or more times)

The following is an running list of all words that occur eight or more times in Xenophon's *Anabasis* Book III. The glossary includes an alphabetized list of these same words. The number of occurrences, indicated at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author.

- 1 αὐτός, -ή, -ό: -self; he, she, it; the same, 106
- 1 βασιλεύς, ὁ: a king, chief, 29
- 1 δέ but and on the other hand 286
- 1 δή: indeed, surely, really, certainly, just, 17
- 1 γίγνομαι: to come to be, become, be born, 28
- 1 Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνας, ὁ: Greek, Hellen, 35
- 1 ἐν: in, on, among. (+ dat.), 50
- 1 ἐπεὶ: when, after, since, because, 36
- 1 ἐπί: near (gen.), to, toward (acc.); near, at, 66
- 1 ἔτι: still, besides, further, 14
- 1 ἤ: or (either...or); than, 23
- 1 εἶμι: to be, exist, 165
- 1 καί: and, also, even, too, 365
- 1 Κῦρος, ὁ: Cyrus, 17
- 1 λοχαγός, ὁ: captain, head of a λόχος, 19
- 1 μέν: on the one hand, 115
- 1 ὁ, ἡ, τό: the, 782
- 1 ὅσος, -η, -ον: as many as; all who or which 14
- 1 ὅτι: that; because, 48
- 1 οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ: not, 51
- 1 οὐδ-είς, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν: no one, nothing, 30
- 1 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: every, all, the whole, 33
- 1 πόλις, ἡ: a city, 10
- 1 πολέμιος, -α, -ον: hostile; *subst.* enemy, 46
- 1 πολὺς, πολλά, πολύ: much, many, 59
- 1 πρόσθεν: before, 12
- 1 σπονδή, ἡ: a drink-offering; truce, treaty, 8
- 1 στρατηγός, ὁ: general, 26
- 1 στρατιώτης, -ου, ὁ: soldier, 15
- 1 σύν: along with, with, together (+ gen.), 27
- 1 Τισσαφέρνης, -ους, ὁ: Tissaphernes, 15
- 2 ἄν: modal adv., 52
- 2 βάρβαρος, -α, -ον: foreigner, barbarian, 16
- 2 δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 28
- 2 εἰς (ἐς): into, to, in regard to (+ acc.), 42
- 2 ἔρχομαι: to come or go, 28
- 2 ἔχω: have, possess; be able; be disposed, 45

- 2 ἵππεύς, ὁ: a horseman, cavalry, 20
 2 μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 10
 2 νικάω: to conquer, defeat, win, 9
 2 νύξ, νυκτος, ἡ: a night, 10
 2 ὁδός, ἡ: road, way, path, journey, 12
 2 ὀλίγος -η, -ον: few, little, small, 8
 2 ὄπλον, τό: a tool, implement; arms, 11
 2 οὐδέ: and not, but not, nor, not even, 15
 2 οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο: this, these, 130
 2 ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 10
 2 τυγχάνω: chance upon, get; meet; happen 13
 2 ὑπό: by, because of, from (gen) under, 11
 2 ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 18
 3 ἀλλά: but, yet, 48
 3 ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: himself, her-, it-, thems-, 10
 3 εἰ: if, whether, 45
 3 νομίζω: to believe, think, deem, 11
 3 φημί: to say, claim, assert, 22
 3 μέντοι: however, nevertheless; certainly, 9
 3 Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος, ὁ: Xenophon, 25
 3 ὅς, ἧ, ὅ: who, which, that, 58
 3 οὐ-τε: and not, neither...nor, 23
 3 οὕτως: in this way, thus, so, 13
 3 ὁράω: to see, look, behold, 32
 3 περί: around, about, concerning, 12
 3 ποιέω: to do, make, create, compose, 27
 4 ἀκούω: to hear, listen to, 14
 4 δεῖ: it is necessary, must, ought (+ inf.), 14
 4 δοκέω: to seem (good), think, imagine, 39
 4 θεός, ὁ: a god, divinity, 28
 4 καλός, -ή, -όν: beautiful, noble; *adv.* well, 19
 4 λέγω: to say, speak; gather, 36
 4 μή: not, lest, 32
 4 πάλιν: again, once more; back, backwards, 1πειρεπε1
 4 πρὸς: to (acc.), near, in addition to (dat.), 34
 4 πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first, earliest, 13
 4 σώζω: to save, keep, preserve, 8
 4 τις, τι: anyone, anything, someone, something, 44
 4 τίς, τί: who? which?, 18
 5 γάρ for since 73
 5 εἶπον: *aor.*, said, spoke, 16
 5 ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 13
 5 θύω: to sacrifice, 8
 5 κατα-λαμβάνω: to seize, lay hold of, find, 10

- 5 **κελεύω**: to bid, order, command, exhort, 10
 5 **μένω**: to stay, remain; wait for, 10
 5 **οἶδα**: to know, 11
 5 **ὅπως**: how, in what way; so that, 9
 5 **πορεύομαι**: to travel, journey, march, 34
 5 **ταχύς, -εῖα, -ύ**: quick, swift, hastily, 12
 6 **ἄλλος, -η, -ο**: other, one...another, 40
 6 **διά**: through (+gen) on account of (+ acc), 13
 6 **εἷς, μία, ἓν**: one, single, alone, 8
 6 **ἐκ, ἐξ**: out of, from (+ gen.), 26
 7 **ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν**: good, brave, capable, 16
 7 **ἀπό**: from, away from. (+ gen.), 19
 7 **ἐπειδή**: when, since, after, 9
 7 **μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα**: big, great, important 11
 7 **τοιοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο**: such, this sort, 8
 7 **χώρα, ἡ**: place; land, region, country, 11
 8 **ἅμα**: at the same time; along with (+ dat.), 8
 8 **ἀν-ίστημι**: to make stand up, raise; rise, 8
 8 **ἄνθρωπος, ἄνδρως, ὁ**: a man, 31
 8 **ἀπο-θνήσκω**: to die off, perish, 10
 8 **ἐγώ**: I, 16
 8 **ἡμέρα, ἡ**: day, 15
 8 **οὕτως**: and so, then; at all events, 19
 8 **πάσχω**: to suffer, experience, 12
 8 **συν-έρχομαι**: come together, meet in battle 8
 8 **ὦ**: O! oh!, 18
 8 **ὥσπερ**: as, just as, as if, 8
 9 **ἡμεῖς**: we, 77
 9 **οἶομαι**: to suppose, think, imagine, 9
 9 **πόλεμος, ὁ**: battle, fight, war, 10
 9 **ὑμεῖς**: you, 39
 9 **ὥς**: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 51
 10 **ἄνθρωπος, ὁ**: human being, person, 8
 10 **ἀντί**: instead of, in place of (+ gen.), 8
 10 **ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον**: that, those, 12
 11 **ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον**: suitable; provisions, 11
 11 **μᾶλλον**: more, rather, 8
 11 **νῦν**: now; as it is, 28
 11 **ὅποτε**: when, by what time, 10
 11 **ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι**: whoever, which- whatever 12
 12 **ἤν**: if ever, **ἐάν**, 18
 13 **ἄρχω**: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 18
 13 **βούλομαι**: to wish, be willing, desire, 13
 13 **δίδωμι**: to give, offer, grant, provide, 8

- 13 **ἑθέλω (θέλω)**: to be willing, wish, desire, 9
 13 **ἔπομαι**: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
 13 **ἡγέομαι**: to lead; consider, believe (dat) 8
 13 **ἴσος, -η, -ον**: equal to, the same as, like, 8
 13 **κακός, -ή, -όν**: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 10
 13 **φαίνω**: to show; *mid.* appear, seem, 8
 14 **γε**: at least at any rate; indeed 13
 14 **σύ**: you, 9
 15 **τε**: both, and, 33
 16 **ἀπ-έρχομαι**: to go away, depart, 16
 16 **εἶδον**: aor. of ὁράω, to see, behold, 10
 16 **τάξις, -εως, ἡ**: unit, division, rank; post, 8
 16 **χράομαι**: to use, employ, enjoy, indulge, 9
 17 **ἐνταῦθα**: then, here, hither, there, thither, 13
 17 **ἐπίσταμαι**: know, know how, understand 10
 17 **Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος, ὁ**: Xenophon, 25
 18 **πειράω**: to try, attempt, endeavor, 10
 19 **στράτευμα, τό**: army, expedition, 13
 21 **γιγνώσκω**: to come to know, learn, realize, 8
 22 **Χειρίσοφος, ὁ**: Cheirisophus, 14
 23 **αἰρέω**: seize, take; *mid.* choose, 9
 23 **δέομαι**: to be lacking, want of, need (gen), 9
 26 **λαμβάνω**: to take, receive, catch, grasp, 15
 30 **κατά**: down from (gen), down (along) (acc) 12
 30 **Πέρσης, -ου, ὁ**: a Persian, 9
 33 **φεύγω**: to flee, escape; defend in court, 9
 34 **ἵππος, ὁ**: a horse, 15
 36 **δια-βαίνω**: to walk or pass over; cross 11
 36 **οὔδέ**: and not, but not, nor, not even, 15
 37 **πεδῖον, τό**: plain, 9
 43 **διώκω**: to pursue, follow; prosecute, 17
 43 **κώμη, ἡ**: town, country town, 15
 43 **πλαίσιον, τό**: rectangle, 8
 44 **δύο**: two, 11
 50 **σπενδονάω**: to throw from a sling, 9
 50 **τοξεύω**: to shoot with the bow, 8
 69 **ὄρος, -εος, τό**: a mountain, hill, 12

ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΕΩΣ Γ

1. [ὄσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀναβάσει οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν 1
μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κύρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐγένετο
ἀπιόντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς,
ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.]

2. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν καὶ τῶν λοχα- 5
γῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπόμενοι ἀπωλώλεσαν, ἐν
πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορία ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐννοούμενοι ὅτι ἐπὶ
ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, κύκλῳ δὲ αὐτοῖς πάντῃ πολλὰ
καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμια ἦσαν, ἀγορὰν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι
παρέξειν ἔμελλεν, ἀπείχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἢ μύρια 10

ἀγορά, ἡ: marketplace, trade, assembly, 3
ἀνά-βασις, -εως, ἡ: going up, ascent, 1
ἀπ-έχω: be distant/away, keep away from, 5
ἀ-πορία, ἡ: difficulty, bewilderment, 5
ἀπ-όλλυμι: destroy, lose; *mid.* perish, 7
δηλώω: to make clear, show, reveal, 2
ἔθνος, -εος, τό: race, people, tribe, 1
Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ: Greece, Hellas, 7
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to, 7
ἐν-νοέω: to be anxious; consider, reflect, 5
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 5

τελευταίω: to end, complete, finish; die, 2
θύρα, ἡ: door, gate, 1
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 4
λόγος, ὁ: word, speech, account, argument 3
μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat, 4
μείων, μείον: smaller, less, of lesser value, 4
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 2
μυρίος, -η, -ον: numberless, countless, 4
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 6
συλ-λαμβάνω: to seize, gather; help, 4
συν-έπομαι: follow along with, accompany, 2

1 ὄσα...ὄσα...: *as many things as...*; '(all the things) which,' relative clauses, the missing neuter antecedent is subject of δεδήλωται below; the brackets indicate that the author thinks that these lines should be deleted
μὲν δὴ: *in fact*; 'certainly' positive certainty expressed in conclusions or summaries
τῇ ἀναβάσει: i.e. the march inland led by Cyrus to reclaim the throne of Persia
2 ἐτελεύτησεν: *died*
ἐγένετο: *occurred, happened*; 3s with neuter pl. subject; aor. γίνομαι
3 ἀπιόντων...Ἑλλήνων: gen. absolute, pple ἀπ-έρχομαι
ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς: i.e. during the truce
4 δεδήλωται: 3s pf. pass. with pl. subject
5 συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν: *had been...*;

periphrastic plpf. pass. (pf. pass. pple + impf. εἰμί), συλλαμβάνω, 'seize together'
τῶν λοχαγῶν...: *among...*; partitive gen.
6 ἀπωλώλεσαν: plpf. ἀπ-όλλυμι
7 δὴ: *quite, very*; intensive use with πολλῇ ἦσαν: impf. εἰμί
ἐπὶ...θύραις: *at the...*; hyperbole: the Greeks remain far from Babylon's gates
8 κύκλῳ: *around*; 'in a circle,' dat. manner αὐτοῖς: *for...*; dat. of interest or dat. of special adj. πολέμια
πάντῃ: *in every direction*; 'in every way,' dat. of manner
πολλὰ: modifies both ἔθνη and πόλεις, fem. nom. pl. of πόλις
10 ἀπείχον: 3p impf. + gen. of separation (from...); comparative adv. μείον

στάδια, ἡγεμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν, ποταμοὶ δὲ διείργον 11
 ἀδιάβατοι ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ, προυδεδώκεσαν δὲ
 αὐτοὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι, μόνοι δὲ
 καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἰππέα οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες,
 ὥστε εὐδηλον ἦν ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, 15
 ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη· 3. ταῦτ' ἐννοοῦμενοι
 καὶ ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν ἐσπέραν σίτου
 ἐγεύσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ ἀνέκαυσαν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ὄπλα πολλοὶ
 οὐκ ἦλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, ἀνεπαύοντο δὲ ὅπου ἐτύχανον
 ἕκαστος, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθεῦδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πα- 20

ἀ-διά-βατος, -ον: not passable or fordable, 1
 ἀ-θυμός, -όν: fainthearted, spiritless, 4
 ἀνα-βαίνω: to go up, climb, mount, 6
 ἀνα-παύω: to stop, make cease; *mid.*, rest, 3
 ἀνα-καίω: to light up, 1
 δι-είργω: to keep separate, lie inbetween, 1
 γεύω: to taste, give a taste (gen) 1
 ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 6
 ἐν-νοέω: to be anxious; consider, reflect, 5
 ἐσπέρα, ἡ: evening; west, 2
 εὐ-δηλος, -ον: quite clear, very evident, 1
 ἡγεμῶν, ὁ: guide, leader, commander, 4
 ἡττάομαι: to be less, be weaker or inferior, 4
 καθ-εύδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 3

κατα-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 5
 κατα-καίνω: to kill, slay, 3
 λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 1
 λύπη, ἡ: pain, distress, grief, 1
 μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 5
 οἴκα-δε: homeward, home, 4
 ὅπου: where, 5
 πατρίς, -ίδος: fatherland, native land, 3
 πόθος, ὁ: longing, yearning, 1
 προ-δίδωμι: to betray, give over, 4
 πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 3
 σίτος, ὁ: grain, bread, food, 3
 στάδιον, τό: stade (600 ft., 1/8 of a mile), 6
 σύμ-μαχος, -ον: ally, co-fighter, 3

11 στάδια: acc. of extent
 12 ἐν μέσῳ: i.e. inbetween the Greeks and the route home
 τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ: *from...*; gen. separation
 διείργον: 3p impf.; add Greeks as object
 προυδεδώκεσαν: plpf. προ-δίδωμι
 ἀναβάντες: i.e. the march inland
 14 καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν: periphrastic plpf. (pf. pass. pple + impf. εἰμί), καταλείπω
 οὐδὲ...οὐδένα: *not...any*
 15 ἦν: 3s impf. εἰμί
 νικῶντες: (*if*) *being victorious*; i.e. 'if they should wish to be victorious'; the pple is conditional in sense
 οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν: *they could...*; potential aor. opt. κατακαίνω
 16 ἡττηθέντων...αὐτῶν: (*if*) *they should be...*; gen. abs. conditional in sense; aor.

pass. ἡττάομαι
 ἂν λειφθείη: *would be...*; 3s potential opt.
 aor. pass. λείπω
 ταῦτ(α): neut. pl. object of ἐννοοῦμενοι
 17 ἀθύμως ἔχοντες: *being...*; ἔχω ('is disposed,' 'holds') + adv. can often be translated as εἰμί + a predicate adjective
 αὐτῶν: i.e. of the Greeks, partitive gen.
 εἰς: *at..., near...*; 'up to'
 σίτου: partitive gen. object of main verb
 18 ἀνέκαυσαν: aor. ἀνα-καίω
 ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα: i.e. to quarters, the soldiers did not set up quarters to sleep
 19 ταύτην τὴν νύκτα: *for...*; acc. of duration
 ἐτύχανον: *happened (to rest)*
 20 ὑπὸ: *because of...*; gen. of cause
 πα(τρίδων): *for...*; objective gen. following πόθου

τριδων, γονέων, γυναικῶν, παιδων, οὓς οὐποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἔτι 1
ὄψεσθαι. οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες ἀνεπαύοντο.

4. ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς οὐτε 5
στρατηγὸς οὐτε λοχαγὸς οὐτε στρατιώτης ὦν συνηκολούθει,
ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο οἴκοθεν ξένος ὦν ἀρχαῖος·
ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρω ποιήσειν,
ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη κρείττω ἑαυτῷ νομίζειν τῆς πατρίδος. 5. ὁ μέντοι
Ξενοφῶν ἀναγνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακουοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ
Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπτέυσας

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6
ἀνα-γιγνώσκω: to recognize, read, 1
ἀνα-κοινῶ: to communicate, consult, impart, 2
ἀνα-παύω: to stop, make cease; *mid.*, rest, 3
ἀρχαῖος, -α, -ον: ancient, old, 1
γονεὺς, -έως, ὁ: a begetter, parent, 1
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 4
δια-κείμεαι: to be disposed, be in a state, 1
ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a letter, 1
κρείττων, -ον: better, stronger, superior, 5
μετα-πέμπω: send after, send for, summon, 1
ξένος, ὁ: guest-friend, friend, stranger, 1

οἴκο-θεν: from home, 1
οὐ-ποτε: never, 3
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 2
πατρίς, -ιδος: fatherland, native land, 3
πορεία, ἡ: march, journey, way, 5
Πρόξενος, ὁ: Proxenus, 7
στρατία, ἡ: army, expedition, land force, 4
συν-ακολουθέω: follow along with, follow, 1
Σωκράτης, -ους, ὁ: Socrates, 4
ὑπ-ισχνέομαι: to promise, 2
ὑπο-πτέω: to be suspicious, suspect, 1
φίλος, -α, -ον: friendly, dear; friend, kin, 5

1 πατρίδων...παιδων: *for...*; objective gen.
οὓς: *whom...*; acc. pl. relative pronoun
οὐποτ(ε)...ἔτι: i.e. never again
2 ὄψεσθαι: (*that they*)...; fut. deponent inf.
ὄραω; supply an acc. subject
2 οὕτω...δὴ: *precisely in this way*; or 'in
just this way,' intensive
3 ἦν: *there was...*; Xenophon talks about
himself in the 3s
4 ὦν: nom. sg. pres. pple εἰμί
5 αὐτὸν: i.e. Xenophon
ὦν: nom. sg. pres. pple εἰμί
6 ὑπισχνεῖτο: impf. mid. ὑπ-ισχνέομαι
αὐτῷ: *him*; dat. indirect obj.
εἰ ἔλθοι: *that...*; 3s aor. opt. ἔρχομαι
replacing ἄν + subj. (ἔλθη) in ind. disc. in

secondary seq.; the direct discourse was a
future more vivid condition (εἰ ἄν + subj.,
fut. ind.)
6 ποιήσειν: *would make (x) (y)*; governs a
double acc., φίλον is a predicative acc.
Κύρω: dat. with special adjective φίλον
7 ὃν...κρείττω νομίζειν: *whom...*; double
acc.; κρείττο(ν)α is a predicative acc.
αὐτὸς: *he himself*; intensive, i.e. Proxenus
ἔφη: 3s impf. φημί ἀναγιγνώσκω
κρείττω: κρείττο(ν)α, contracted acc. sg.
ἑαυτῷ: *for...*; dat. of interest
τῆς πατρίδος: gen. of comparison
8 ἀναγνοὺς: nom. sg. aor. pple
ἀναγιγνώσκω
Σωκράτει: *with...*; dat. of association

μή τι πρὸς τῆς πόλεως ὑπαίτιον εἶη Κύρῳ φίλον γενέσθαι, 10
 ὅτι ἐδόκει ὁ Κῦρος προθύμως τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς
 Ἀθήνας συμπολεμῆσαι, συμβουλεύει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθόντα
 εἰς Δελφοὺς ἀνακοινῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. 6. ἐλθὼν
 δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπήρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω τίνι ἂν θεῶν θύων καὶ
 εὐχόμενος κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν ἐπινοεῖ 15
 καὶ καλῶς πράξας σωθείη. καὶ ἀνεῖλεν αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀπόλλων
 θεοὺς οἷς ἔδει θύειν. 7. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦλθε, λέγει τὴν μαντείαν
 τῷ Σωκράτει. ὁ δ' ἀκούσας ἠτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο πρῶτον

Ἀθῆναι, αἱ: Athens, 2

αἰτιάζομαι: accuse, charge; blame, 3

ἀν-αιρέω: to take up, reply; win, gain, 2

ἀνα-κοινῶω: communicate, consult, impart, 2

Ἀπόλλων, ὁ: Apollo, 2

ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, 2

Δελφοί, -ῶν, οἱ: Delphi, 1

ἐπ-έρομαι: to ask in addition, 1

ἐπι-νοέω: have in mind, intend, 1

εὐχομαι: to pray, offer prayers, 7

Λακεδαιμόνιος, -η, -ον: Lacedaemonian, 3

μαντεία, ἡ: prophecy; power of prophecy, 1

πορεία, ἡ: march, journey, way, 5

πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 5

πρό-θυμος, ον: eager, willing, ready, 2

συμ-βουλεύω: deliberate together, advise, 1

συμ-πολεμέω: join in war, 1

Σωκράτης, -ους, ὁ: Socrates, 4

ὑπ-αίτιος, -ον: blameworthy, under blame, 1

φίλος, -α, -ον: friendly, dear; friend, kin, 5

10 μὴ...εἶη: *that...*; 'lest...' introducing a clause of fearing with pres. opt. εἶμι

τι: *at all*; adverbial acc.

πρὸς τῆς πόλεως: *in the eyes of...*; πρὸς + gen. may be gen. of agent or, as here, express the point of view

ὑπαίτιον: neuter sg. pred. of εἶη

Κύρῳ φίλον γενέσθαι: (*that he...*)...; i.e. 'that Xenophon...'; subject of εἶη, aor. inf. of γίγνομαι

11 ὅτι: *because...*

Λακεδαιμονίοις: *along with...*; dat. of compound verb

ἐπὶ: *against...*

12 συμπολεμῆσαι: aor. inf.

τῷ Ξενοφῶντι: *with...*; dat. compound verb

ἐλθόντα: *that (he)...*; aor. pple ἔρχομαι agreeing with the missing acc. subject

13 ἀνακοινῶσαι: aor. inf.

14 ἐπήρετο: aor. mid. ἐπ-έρομαι

Ἀπόλλω: Ἀπόλλω(ν)α, acc. sg.

τίνι...θεῶν: *to which...*; ind. question; dat. of interest interrogative and partitive gen.

15 κάλλιστα, ἄριστα: superlative adverbs, the adv. καλῶς often means 'well:' hence, κάλλιστα means 'very well'
 ἂν...ἔλθοι: *he might...*; potential aor. opt. ἔρχομαι

τὴν ὁδόν: *along the journey*; cognate acc. or possibly acc. of extent

ἣν: *along which...*; i.e. ὁδόν, cognate acc.

16 πράξας: nom. sg. aor pple. πράττω (stem. πραγ-)

σωθείη: potential opt. 3s aor. pass. σφῶζω

ἀνεῖλεν: aor. ἀν-αιρέω

17 θεοὺς οἷς: *to which gods...*; οἷς θεοῖς

18 ὁ δ(έ): *and he...*; i.e. Socrates

ὅτι: *because...*

τοῦτο: acc. direct object, the ind. question that follows is in apposition to this pronoun

πρῶτον: *first of all*; adverbial acc.

ἡρώτα πότερον λῶον εἶη αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐ-
 τὸς κρίνας ἰτέον εἶναι τοῦτ' ἐπυθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα 20
 πορευθεῖη. ἐπεὶ μέντοι οὕτως ἤρου, ταῦτ', ἔφη, χρὴ ποιεῖν
 ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν. 8. ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν οὕτω θυσάμενος
 οἷς ἀνεῖλεν ὁ θεὸς ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι
 Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον μέλλοντας ἤδη ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν, καὶ
 συνεστάθη Κύρω. 9. προθυμουμένου δὲ τοῦ Πρόξενου καὶ ὁ 25
 Κῦρος συμπρουθυμεῖτο μείναι αὐτόν, εἶπε δὲ ὅτι ἐπειδὴν
 τάχιστα ἢ στρατεία λήξῃ, εὐθύς ἀποπέμψει αὐτόν. ἐλέγετο
 δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς Πισίδας. 10. ἐστρατεύετο μὲν δὴ οὕτως
 ἑξαπατηθεῖς—οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ ἦδει τὴν ἐπὶ

ἀν-αίρέω: to take up, reply; win, gain, 2

ἄνω: up, above, 2

ἀπο-πέμπω: to send away, dismiss, 1

ἐκ-πλέω: to sail out, 1

ἐξ-απατάω: to deceive thoroughly, 5

ἐπειδὴν: whenever, 1

ἔρωμαι: to ask, enquire, question, 1

ἔρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 3

εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once 7

ἰτεός, -ον: one must go, it must be traveled, 1

κρίνω: to decide, judge, 2

λήγω: to cease, leave off, abate, 1

λῶων, -ον: better, more agreeable, 1

μέλλω: to be about to, intend to; delay, 7

ὁρμάω: to set in motion, set out, begin, 4

Πισίδαί, οἱ: Pisidians, 2

πότερος -α -ον: which of the two? whether? 3

προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 2

Πρόξενος, ὁ: Proxenus, 7

πυθάνομαι: learn (by inquiry or hearsay), 1

Σάρδεις, -εων, αἱ: Sardis (capital of Lydia) 1

στόλος, ὁ: expedition, journey, 4

στρατεία, ἡ: expedition, campaign, 1

στρατεύω: to wage war, campaign against, 7

συμ-προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager also, 1

συν-ίστημι: to set together, introduce, 1

χρῆ: it is necessary, it is fitting; must, ought 2

19 ἡρώτα: ἡρώτα-ε, 3s impf. ἐρωτάω

πότερον...ἢ: *whether...or*; ind. question

in secondary seq. with 3s opt. εἰμί

εἶη: *it...*; impersonal 3s opt. εἰμί, the

infinitives are the subject

αὐτῷ: *for...*; dat. of interest

20 αὐτός: (*he*)...; intensive

κρίνας: nom. sg. aor. pple

ἰτέον εἶναι: *that it must...*; impersonal,

verbal adj. + εἰμί expresses necessity

τοῦτ(ο)...ὅπως: *this (namely) how...*

ἂν πορευθεῖη: *he might...*; potential opt.

aor. pass. dep. πορεύομαι

κάλλιστα: superlative adv. καλῶς, 'well'

21 ἤρου: ἤρε(σ)ο, 2s aor. mid. ἔρωμαι

ἔφη: (*Socrates*) *said*; impf. φημί

22 μὲν δὴ: *in fact*; 'certainly,' an affirmative

to summarize what has been said earlier

23 οἷς: (*to those gods*) *whom...*; relative, acc.

attracted into the dat. of missing antecedent

ἀνεῖλεν: aor. ἀναίρέω (aor. ἔλ)

24 ὁρμᾶν: inf. α-contract verb

τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν: *along...*; cognate acc. (or

extent); ἄνω means 'up' from the coast

25 συνεστάθη: 3s aor. pass. συνίστημι

26 μείναι: aor. inf. μένω

εἶπε: aor. λέγω

27 λήξῃ: 3s aor. subj. + ἂν in a general

(indefinite) temporal clause

28 εἰς Πισίδας: *against the Pisidians*

29 ἑξαπατηθεῖς: nom. sg. aor. pass. pple

ἦδει: plpf. οἶδα, simply past in sense

βασιλέα ὀρμήν οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν 1
 Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέντοι εἰς Κιλικίαν ἦλθον, σαφὲς πᾶσιν
 ἤδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἶη ἐπὶ βασιλέα. φοβούμενοι
 δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ
 ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν· ὧν εἰς καὶ Ξενοφῶν 5
 ἦν. 11 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπορία ἦν, ἐλυπεῖτο μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ
 οὐκ ἐδύνατο καθεῦδεν· μικρὸν δ' ὕπνου λαχὼν εἶδεν ὄναρ.
 ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ βροντῆς γενομένης σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν
 πατρώαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου λάμπεσθαι πᾶσα. 12. περίφοβος

ἀ-πορία, ἡ: difficulty, bewilderment, 5
 αἰσχύνη, ἡ: shame, disgrace, dishonor, 1
 ἄκων (ἀ-έκων), ἄκουσα, ἄκων: unwilling, 3
 ἀλλήλων: one another, 4
 βροντή, ἡ: thunder, 2
 καθ-εὔδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 3
 Κιλικία, ἡ: Cilicia, 1
 Κλεάρχος, ὁ: Clearchus, 5
 λαγχάνω: to obtain by lot, 1
 λάμπω: to shine, blaze, 2
 λυπέω: to cause pain, distress, grief, 1
 μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 4
 οἰκία, ἡ: house, dwelling, building, 1

ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 3
 ὄναρ, τό: a dream, vision in sleep, 5
 ὀρμή, ἡ: assault, attack, onset, 2
 πατρῷος, -η, -ον: of one's father, inherited, 2
 περί-φοβος, -ον: in great fear, 1
 πίπτω: to fall, 1
 πλὴν: except, but (+ gen.), 3
 σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct, definite, 2
 σκηπτός, ὁ: thunderbolt, 1
 στόλος, ὁ: expedition, journey, 4
 συν-ακολουθέω: follow along with, follow, 1
 ὕπνος, ὁ: sleep, slumber, 1
 φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 7

1 ἐπὶ βασιλέα: *against the king*
 2 ἦλθον: aor. ἔρχομαι
 σαφές: neuter pred. of inf. εἰμί
 πᾶσιν: dat. pl. of reference, πᾶς
 3 εἶη: ind. disc. opt. εἰμί: translate as simple
 past
 4 καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου: *both before...
 and before...*; objective genitives
 with αἰσχύνην
 5 συνηκολούθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.
 ὧν: *of...*; relative, partitive gen. with εἰς
 καὶ: adverbial, not a conjunction

6 ἦν: *there was*
 ἐλυπεῖτο: impf. mid., Xenophon is subject
 7 ὕπνου: partitive gen. following μικρὸν
 λαχὼν: nom. sg. aor. pple. λαγχάνω
 εἶδεν: aor. ὁράω
 8 ἔδοξεν: i.e. appeared in a vision
 βροντῆς γενομένης: gen. abs., γίγνομαι
 πεσεῖν: aor. inf. πίπτω
 9 πᾶσα (οἰκία ἔδοξεν): ellipsis; fem. sg.
 πᾶσα refers to the οἰκίαν mentioned earlier
 in the line

δ' εὐθύς ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ τὸ ὄναρ τῇ μὲν ἔκρινεν ἀγαθόν, ὅτι ἐν 10
 πόνοις ὦν καὶ κινδύνοις φῶς μέγα ἐκ Διὸς ἰδεῖν ἔδοξε· τῇ
 δὲ καὶ ἐφοβείτο, ὅτι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν βασιλέως τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει
 αὐτῷ εἶναι, κύκλῳ δὲ ἐδόκει λάμπεσθαι τὸ πῦρ, μὴ οὐ δύναίτο
 ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐξελθεῖν τῆς βασιλέως, ἀλλ' εἴργοιτο πάντοθεν
 ὑπὸ τινῶν ἀποριῶν. 13. ὁποῖόν τι μὲν δὴ ἐστὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον 15
 ὄναρ ἰδεῖν ἕξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων μετὰ τὸ ὄναρ.
 γίγνεται γὰρ τάδε. εὐθύς ἐπειδὴ ἀνηγέρθη, πρῶτον μὲν
 ἔννοια αὐτῷ ἐμπίπτει· τί κατάκειμαι; ἡ δὲ νύξ προβαίνει·

ἀ-πορία, ἡ: difficulty, bewilderment, 5
 ἀν-εγείρω: to wake up, rouse, 2
 ἐμ-πίπτω: to fall upon, 1
 ἐν-νοια, ἡ: thought, notion, conception, 1
 ἐξ-έρχομαι: to go out, come out, 2
 ἕξ-εστι: it is allowed, it is possible, 6
 εἴργω: to shut out, exclude, 2
 εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once 7
 Ζεὺς, ὁ: Zeus, 4
 κατα-κέιμαι: to lie down, lie outstretched, 3
 κίνδυνος, ὁ: risk, danger, venture, 2
 κρίνω: to decide, judge, 2
 κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 4

λάμπω: to shine, blaze, 2
 μετὰ: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 4
 ὅδε, ἧδε, τόδε: this, this here, 4
 ὄναρ, τό: a dream, vision in sleep, 5
 ὁποῖος, -α, -ον: of what sort, of what kind, 1
 πάντο-θεν: from all sides, 1
 πόνος, ὁ: work, toil, 2
 προ-βαίνω: to advance, step forward, 1
 πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 3
 σκοπέω: to look at, examine, consider, 1
 συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, 1
 φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 7
 φῶς, φωτός, τό: light, 1

10 ἀνηγέρθη: 3s aor. pass.

τῇ μὲν...τῇ δὲ: *in this way...in that way*;
dat. of manner

ὅτι: *because...*

11 ὦν: nom. sg. ppl. εἰμί

Διὸς: gen. Ζεὺς

ἰδεῖν: aor. inf. ὁράω

ἔδοξε: Xenophon is subject

12 ἀπὸ Διὸς...βασιλέως: *from Zeus the King*; Zeus represents the King of Persia in this interpretation

13 κύκλῳ: *in...*; 'all around,' dat. of manner

μὴ οὐ...: *lest he not...*; clause of fearing governed by ἐφοβείτο; pres. opt. δύναμαι replaces subj. in secondary sequence; μὴ οὐ is used in a negative fearing clause

14 εἴργοιτο: passive opt. εἴργω in the same fearing clause

ὑπὸ: *because of...*; gen. of cause

15 ὁποῖόν τι...δὴ: *Just what sort at all is...*; the subject of ἐστὶ is the articular inf. τὸ... ἰδεῖν, 'to see...' intensive δὴ modifies ὁποῖον while neuter τι makes the pronoun more indefinite; the entire clause is object of σκοπεῖν

τὸ...ἰδεῖν: aor. ὁράω

16 συμβάντων: (*things*)...; i.e. outcomes; aor. ppl. substantive

17 γίγνεται: *are occurring*; neut. pl. subject

τάδε: i.e. the things that follow

ἀνηγέρθη: see line 10 above

πρῶτον: adverbial acc.

18 αὐτῷ: *upon him*; dat. of compound verb ἐμπίπτει

τί κατάκειμαι: *why...?*; in apposition to ἔννοια

ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἦξεν. εἰ δὲ γενη-
 σόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμποδῶν μὴ οὐχὶ πάντα μὲν τὰ 20
 χαλεπώτατα ἐπιδόντας, πάντα δὲ τὰ δεινότατα παθόντας
 ὑβριζομένους ἀποθανεῖν; 14. ὅπως δ' ἀμννούμεθα οὐδεὶς παρα-
 σκευάζεται οὐδὲ ἐπιμελεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακείμεθα ὥσπερ ἐξὸν
 ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν. ἐγὼ οὖν τὸν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως στρα-
 τηγὸν προσδοκῶ ταῦτα πράξειν; ποίαν δ' ἡλικίαν ἐμαντῶ 25
 ἐλθεῖν ἀναμείνω; οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι πρεσβύτερος ἔσομαι,
 ἐὰν τήμερον προδῶ ἐμαντὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις.' 15. ἐκ τούτου ἀνί-
 σταται καὶ συγκαλεῖ τοὺς Προξένου πρῶτον λοχαγούς. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξεν· 'ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, οὔτε καθεύδειν

ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 7
 ἀμννοῦμαι: to ward off, keep off, defend, 2
 ἀνα-μένω: to wait for, await, 2
 δεινός, -ή, -όν: skillful, clever; terrible, 3
 ἐάν: εἰ ἂν, if (+ subj.), 3
 ἐγώγε: I, for my part, 4
 εἰκός, ὅτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 5
 ἐμ-ποδῶν: in the way, before one's feet, 1
 ἐμ-προσθεν: in front, before, 1
 ἐμαντοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: myself, 3
 ἔξ-εστι: it is allowed, it is possible, 6
 ἐπ-εἶδον: to look upon, 1
 ἐπι-μέλ(ε)ομαι: to care for, look after, 3
 ἦκω: to have come, be present, 5
 ἡλικία, ἡ: age, time of life, 2

ἡσυχία, ἡ: quiet, rest, idleness, silence, 1
 καθ-εὔδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 3
 κατα-κείμεαι: to lie down, lie outstretched, 3
 παρασκευάζω: to prepare, get ready, 3
 ποῖος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 2
 πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 5
 πρέσβυς, -εως, ὁ: old man; ambassador, 5
 προ-δίδωμι: to betray, give over, 4
 Πρόξενος, ὁ: Proxenus, 7
 προς-δοκάω: to expect, look for, 1
 συγ-καλέω: to call together, assemble, 3
 τήμερον: today, 2
 ὑβρίζω: to commit outrage, insult, maltreat, 2
 χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 4

19 ἄμα: *as soon as* + dat.
 εἰκός (ἔστι): (*it is*)...; supply verb
 ἦξεν: *that*...; fut. ἦκω; πολεμίους is acc. subject
 εἰ γενησόμεθα,...(ἔσται): emotional future more vivid: a fut. replaces ἂν + subj. in a apodosis (εἰ ἂν + subj., fut.) to convey strong emotion, in this case apprehension; fut. γίγνομαι and (εἰμί)
 ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ: *in the hands/power of*
 20 τί (ἔσται) ἐμποδῶν: *what*...; add fut. εἰμί
 μὴ οὐχὶ (ἡμᾶς)...ἀποθανεῖν: *so that (we)*...
 μὴ οὐ + inf. follows a negative verb of hindering or equivalent (here, ἐμποδῶν)
 21 ἐπ-ιδόντας, παθόντας: aor. pple

ἐπ-εἶδον and πάσχω
 22 ὑβριζομένους: *by*...; causal in sense
 ἀποθανεῖν: aor. inf. ἀποθνήσκω
 ὅπως δ' ἀμννούμεθα: *that*...; clause of effort with fut. mid. governed by the two main verbs that follow; supply an object
 23 ὥσπερ ἐξὸν...ἄγειν: *as if it being*...; acc. absolute, neuter sg. pple of ἔξ-εστι; ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν is idiom for 'keep quiet'
 25 προσδοκῶ: *am I to*...; deliberative subj. ἐμαντῶ: *for myself*; dat. of interest
 26 ἀναμείνω: *am I to*...; deliberative subj. ἔσομαι, ἐὰν...προδῶ: future more vivid with fut. εἰμί and aor. subj. προδίδωμι
 29 συνῆλθον, ἔλεξεν: aor. συνέρχομαι, λέγω

δύναμαι, ὥσπερ οἶμαι οὐδ' ὑμεῖς, οὔτε κατακεῖσθαι ἔτι, ὀρών 1
 ἐν οἷοις ἐσμέν. 16. οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολέμοιοι δῆλον ὅτι οὐ πρότερον
 πρὸς ἡμᾶς τὸν πόλεμον ἐξέφηναν πρὶν ἐνόμισαν καλῶς τὰ
 ἑαυτῶν παρασκευάσασθαι, ἡμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς οὐδὲν ἀντεπι-
 μελείται ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. 17. καὶ μὴν εἰ 5
 ὑψησόμεθα καὶ ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ γενησόμεθα, τί οἰόμεθα πεί-
 σσασθαι; ὃς καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου ἀδελφοῦ καὶ τεθηγκότος ἤδη
 ἀποτεμῶν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀνεσταύρωσεν· ἡμᾶς
 δέ, οἷς κηδεμῶν μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστιν, ἐστρατεύσαμεν δὲ

ἀγωνίζομαι: to contend, compete, fight, 2

ἀδελφός, ὄ: a brother, 2

ἀνα-σταυρόω: to fix on a cross, impale, 1

ἀντ-επι-μελέομαι: to attend to in turn, 1

ἀπο-τέμνω: to cut off, sever, 2

δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 5

ἐκ-φαίνω: to bring to light, reveal, 1

θνήσκω: to die, 2

κατα-κείμεαι: to lie down, lie outstretched, 3

κεφαλὴ, ἡ: the head, 1

κηδεμῶν, -όνος, ὄ: guardian, protector, 1

μήν: certainly, truly, surely, 3

1 οἶμαι: οἶομαι, parenthetical

ὑμεῖς: supply verb, e.g. δύνασθε

2 ἐν οἷοις: *in what sort (of troubles)*

ἐσμέν: 1p εἰμί

δῆλον ὅτι: *clearly*; '(it is) clear that...'

πρότερον: *previously*; adverbial acc.

3 πρὸς: *against...*

ἐξέφηναν: 3p aor. ἐκφαίνω

3 πρὶν: *before...*; often, as here, following an adverb such as πρότερον

τὰ ἑαυτῶν: *their own affairs*

ἡμῶν: partitive gen. with. οὐδεὶς

5 ὅπως: *that...*; effort clause with fut. ind.

ὡς κάλλιστα: *as well as possible*; ὡς + superlative often means 'as...as possible'

καὶ μὴν: *and indeed*; adding a new fact

6 εἰ ὑψησόμεθα, γενησόμεθα: fut. mid.

οἷος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 6

ὁμο-μητρίος, -η, -ον: of the same mother, 1

πάρ-εimi: to be near, be present, be at hand, 7

παρασκευάζω: to prepare, get ready, 3

πρὶν: until, before, 3

πρότερος, -α, -ον: before, in front of; earlier 1

στρατεύω: to wage war, campaign against, 7

ὑφ-ίημι: to send under, submit, give up, 3

χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ: hand, 5

ὑφίημι and γίγνομαι, an emotional future more vivid (εἰ ἄν + subj., fut.) is where a fut. replaces ἄν + subj.; the result conveys emotion, in this case apprehension

ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ: *in the hands/power of...*

πείσασθαι: *that (we)...*; fut. dep. πάσχω

7 ὃς: *who...*; or 'since he...' i.e. the Persian king, causal relative pronoun

τοῦ... τεθηγκότος: gen. abs. with pf. act. pple θνήσκω: 'being dead'

8 ἀποτεμῶν...: nom. sg. aor. pple; this happened after the brother's death as an attempt to defile the body

ἡμᾶς...: (*as for*) us; 'in respect to us,' acc. of respect and later acc. subject of παθεῖν below

9 οἷς: *for whom...*; dat. of interest

ἐπ' αὐτὸν ὡς δοῦλον ἀντὶ βασιλέως ποιήσοντας καὶ 10
 ἀποκτενοῦντες εἰ δυναίμεθα, τί ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν; 18. ἄρ' οὐκ
 ἂν ἐπὶ πᾶν ἔλθοι ὡς ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔσχατα αἰκισάμενος πᾶσιν
 ἀνθρώποις φόβον παράσχοι τοῦ στρατεύσαί ποτε ἐπ' αὐτόν;
 ἀλλ' ὅπως τοι μὴ ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ γενησόμεθα πάντα ποιητέον. 15
 19. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἔστε μὲν αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὐποτε ἐπαυόμεν
 ἡμᾶς μὲν οἰκτίρων, βασιλέα δὲ καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ μακαρίζων,
 διαθεώμενος αὐτῶν ὄσση μὲν χώραν καὶ οἶαν ἔχοιεν, ὡς δὲ

αἰκίζω: inflict torture/torment; maltreat, 2
 ἀπο-κτείνω: to kill, slay, 1
 ἄρα: (introduces a yes/no question), 1
 δια-θεάομαι: to look through, examine, 1
 δοῦλος, ὄ: a slave, 1
 ἔστε: ἔσ-οτε until, up to the time that, 6
 ἔσχατος, -η, -ον: extreme, last, furthest, 1
 μακαρίζω: to deem blessed or happy, 1
 οἰκτείρω: to pity, have pity for, 1

οἶος, -α, -ον: what sort, as, 6
 οὐ-ποτε: never, 3
 παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 6
 παύω: to stop, make cease; *mid.* cease 3
 ποιητέος, -ον: to be made, to be done, 2
 ποτέ: ever, at some time, once, 4
 στρατεύω: to wage war, campaign against, 7
 τοι: you know, let me tell you, 2
 φόβος, ὄ: fear, terror, panic, 2

10 ἐπί: *against...*

ὡς...ποιήσοντας: *in order to... (him)...*; 'so as going to...' ὡς + fut. pple. expresses purpose; the pple takes a double acc. ('make x y'); δοῦλον is a predicative acc.

11 ἀποκτενοῦντες: fut. pple also governed by ὡς and expressing purpose
 εἰ δυναίμεθα...ἂν παθεῖν: *if we should... would...*; fut. less vivid condition (εἰ + opt., ἂν + opt.) within ind. discover governed by οἶομαι; ἂν + aor. inf. πάσχω is equiv. to ἂν + opt. in direct discourse; add ἡμᾶς as acc. subject

τί: *what (suffering)*; Interrogative and inner acc. obj. of παθεῖν

12 ἂν...ἔλθοι: *Would...*; potential opt. the King is subject; potential aor. opt. ἐρχομαι ἐπὶ πᾶν: *to every (length)*; i.e. the King will go to the extreme to punish them

13 ὡς...παράσχοι: *so that...might*; purpose clause with opt. in secondary sequence;
 τὰ ἔσχατα: *extreme torments*; inner acc.

πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις: dat. indirect object

14 τοῦ στρατεύσαι: articular inf., objective gen. of φόβον

ἐπι(λ) αὐτόν: *against him*; i.e. the King

15 ὅπως...μὴ...γενησόμεθα: *that...*; ὅπως + fut. ind. γίγνομαι in a neg. clause of effort

ἐπὶ ἐκείνῳ: *in the hands/power of that one*

πάντα: inner acc. of impersonal ποιητέον; which we may translate as the subject, 'all must be done,' or make the object of an active verb, '(we) must do everything'

ποιητέον (ἔστι): *it must...*; '(it is) to be done' impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμί expressing obligation or necessity

16 ἔστε...ἦσαν: *as long as...*; impf. εἰμί

17 τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ: *those with him*;

prepositional phrase in predicative position

18 ὄσση...ἔχοιεν: *how much...*; 3p pres. opt. in an ind. question in secondary seq.

ὡς: *how...*; adv. modifies following adj. in an indirect question

ἄφθονα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ θεράποντας, ὅσα δὲ κτήνη,
 χρυσὸν δέ, ἐσθήτα δέ· 20. τὰ δ' αὖ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὁπότε 20
 ἐνθυμοίμην, ὅτι τῶν μὲν ἀγαθῶν τούτων οὐδενὸς ἡμῖν μετεῖη,
 εἰ μὴ πριαίμεθα, ὅτου δ' ὠνησόμεθα ἦδειν ἔτι ὀλίγους ἔχοντας,
 ἄλλως δέ πως πορίζεσθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἢ ὠνουμένους ὄρκους
 ἦδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς· ταυτ' οὖν λογιζόμενος ἐνίοτε τὰς 25
 σπονδὰς μᾶλλον ἐφοβούμην ἢ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον. 21 ἐπεὶ μέντοι 25
 ἐκεῖνοι ἔλυσαν τὰς σπονδὰς, λελύσθαι μοι δοκεῖ καὶ ἡ ἐκείνων
 ὕβρις καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα ὑποψία. ἐν μέσῳ γὰρ ἦδη κείται ταῦτα

αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 5

ἄ-φθονος, ον: without envy; abundant, 2

λύω: to loosen, free; *mid.* ransom, 2

ἐν-θυμέομαι: take to heart, consider, ponder, 4

ἐνί-οτε: at times, sometimes, 1

ἐσθής, ἐσθητός, τό: clothing, 1

φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 7

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 7

θεράπων, -ποντος, ό: attendant, servant, 2

κατ-έχω: to hold fast, restrain, possess, 1

κείμαι: to lie, lie down 2

κτήνος, τό: flocks, herds, 1

λύω: to loosen, break, free; *mid.* ransom, 5

λογίζω: to count, reckon, calculate, 1

μέτ-ειμι: there is a share of (gen) for (dat), 1
 ὄρκος, ό: an oath, 4

πορίζω: to provide, furnish, carry, 3

πριαμαι to buy, purchase, 1

πως: somehow, in any way, 3

ὕβρις, ή: outrage, insolence, violence, 1

ὑποψία, ή: suspicion, ill-feeling, jealousy, 1

χρυσός, ό: gold, 1

ὠνέομαι to buy, purchase, 3

19 ὡς ἄφθονα...(ἔχοιεν): *how abundant...*;

ind. question, supply verb from above

ὅσους θεράποντας...ἐσθητά δέ: ellipsis;

supply a form of ὅσος and ἔχοιεν for each

of these parallel indirect questions

20 τὰ...στρατιωτῶν: *the affairs of...*;

ὁπότε ἐνθυμοίμην: *whenever...*; 1s opt. in

a past general relative clause: translate as simple past

21 ὅτι: (*namely*) *that...*; in apposition to τὰ

τῶν...ἀγαθῶν τούτων: partitive gen.

modifying οὐδενός

μετεῖη: *there was...*; impersonal opt. in

ind. discourse in secondary seq., μέτειμι

22 εἰ μὴ: *unless...*

ὅτου δ'...ἦδειν...ἔχοντας: *and (that I*

knew that few (of us) still had (the money)

by which we would buy; οὔτινος (ὅτου)

from ὅστις is gen. sg. of price introducing a relative clause with a missing antecedent,

ἀργύριον (silver, money), obj. of ἔχοντας

ἦδειν: plpf. inf. οἶδα (translate as simple

past) is indirect discourse implied by the

ὅτι above (in short, the construction is

grammatical incorrect: we should expect the

opt. instead of an accusative-infinitive construction)

23 ἄλλως...ἡμᾶς: *and (I knew) that the*

oaths now restraining us were not

furnishing provisions in any other way

than (by) buying; supply ἦδειν from line 22

for parallel indirect discourse

25 ἦ: *than*

26 ἔλυσαν: *broke*; i.e. acted contrary to

λελύσθαι (τὰς σπονδὰς): *to have broken*

(*the truce*); pf. mid. λύω

δοκεῖ: 3s with 3p subject

27 ἐν μέσῳ...κείται: *lie in the middle*; i.e. as

if a prize that competitors must run and

grab first; 3s governs neuter pl. subject

τὰ ἀγαθὰ ἄθλα ὁπότεροι ἂν ἡμῶν ἄνδρες ἀμείνονες ὦσιν, 1
 ἀγωνοθέται δ' οἱ θεοὶ εἰσιν, οἱ σὺν ἡμῖν, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἔσονται.
 22. οὗτοι μὲν γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἐπιωρκήκασιν· ἡμεῖς δὲ πολλὰ ὀρῶντες
 ἀγαθὰ στερρῶς αὐτῶν ἀπειχόμεθα διὰ τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὄρκους·
 ὥστε ἐξεῖναι μοι δοκεῖ ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα πολὺ σὺν φρονή- 5
 ματι μείζονι ἢ τούτοις. 23. ἔτι δ' ἔχομεν σώματα ἰκανώτερα
 τούτων καὶ ψυχή καὶ θάλλη καὶ πόνους φέρειν· ἔχομεν δὲ
 καὶ ψυχὰς σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας· οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες καὶ τρωτοὶ
 καὶ θνητοὶ μᾶλλον ἡμῶν, ἦν οἱ θεοὶ ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν νίκην

ἀγών, ὄ: contest, competition, 2
 ἀγωνοθέτης, ὄ: judge (of the contest), 1
 ἄθλον, τό: prize, reward, 1
 ἀμείνων, -ον: better, nobler, braver, 4
 ἀπ-έχω: be distant/away, keep away from, 5
 εἰκός, ὅτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable, 5
 ἐξ-έρχομαι: to go out, come out, 2
 ἔξ-εστί: it is allowed, it is possible, 6
 ἐπι-ορκέω: to swear falsely against, 2
 θάλλος, εος, τό: heat, warmth, 1
 θνητός, -ή, -όν: liable to death, mortal, 1
 ἰκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable 6

μείζων, -ον (-ονος): greater, 1
 νίκη, ἦ: victory in battle, 3
 ὁπότερος, -η, -ον: which (of two), 3
 ὄρκος, ὄ: an oath, 4
 πόνος, ὄ: work, toil, 2
 στερρός, -ή, -όν: steadfast, stiff, firm, solid, 1
 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 2
 τρωτός, -ή, -όν: vulnerable, 1
 φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, convey, 7
 φρόνημα, -ατος, τό: purpose, will; mind, 2
 ψυχή, ἦ: breath, life, spirit, soul, 3
 ψύχος, -εος, τό: cold, 1

- 1 ὁπότεροι ἂν...ὦσιν: *whichever...*; general relative clause with 3p pres. subj. εἰμί
 2 εἰσιν: 3p pres. εἰμί
 οἱ...ἔσονται: *who...*; fut. deponent. εἰμί
 ὡς τὸ εἰκός: *as (is)....*; parenthetical
 3 οὗτοι: *these men*; i.e. the enemy
 ἐπιωρκήκασιν: 3p pf. ἐπι-ορκέω; αὐτοὺς refers to οἱ θεοὶ
 πολλὰ...ἀγαθὰ: neut. substantive; i.e. the abundance around the Greeks
 4 αὐτῶν: *from them*; gen. of separation; refers, just as πολλὰ, to the wealth that the Greeks see around them
 5 ἐξεῖναι (ἡμῖν): inf. ἔξεστί following δοκεῖ
 μοι: dat. of reference withs δοκεῖ
 ἰέναι: inf. ἔρχομαι governed by ἐξεῖναι
 ἐπὶ: *to...*; acc. place to which
 πολὺ: *much*; or 'far,' adverbial acc. (acc. of degree by extent) modifying μείζονι
 σὺν φρονήματι μείζονι: i.e. confidence;

- dat. of manner
 6 τούτοις: (*it is allowed*) *for these*; i.e. the enemy, dat. pl. because it is compared to ἡμῖν, the missing dat. interest with ἐξεῖναι
 7 τούτων: *than...*; gen. of comparison following ἰκανώτερα
 ψυχή: ψυχεα, pl. of ψύχος, note the accent
 φέρειν: i.e. endure; explanatory inf. following ἰκανώτερα
 8 καὶ: *also*
 ψυχὰς: acc. pl. ψυχή, note the accent
 οἱ ἄνδρες (ἔσονται): i.e. the enemy, supply a fut. linking verb εἰμί
 καὶ...καὶ: *both...and*; nom. predicates
 9 ἡμῶν: gen. of comparison
 ἦν...διδῶσιν: *if...*; ἦν = ἔαν, fut. more vivid (εἰ ἂν + subj., fut.); the fut. apodosis ἔσονται is missing but understood
 τὸ πρόσθεν: equiv. to πρόσθεν

ἡμῖν διδῶσιν. 24. ἀλλ' ἴσως γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοι ταῦτὰ ἐνθυμοῦνται, 10
 πρὸς τῶν θεῶν μὴ ἀναμένωμεν ἄλλους ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν
 παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα, ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἄρξωμεν
 τοῦ ἐξορμῆσαι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν· φάνητε τῶν
 λοχαγῶν ἄριστοι καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι.
 25. κἀγὼ δέ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, ἔπεσθαι 15
 ὑμῖν βούλομαι, εἰ δ' ὑμεῖς τάττετ' ἐμὲ ἡγεῖσθαι, οὐδὲν προ-
 φασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀκμάζειν ἡγοῦμαι ἐρύκειν
 ἀπ' ἐμαυτοῦ τὰ κακά.'

ἀκμάζω: be in one's prime/full bloom to, 1
 ἀνα-μένω: to wait for, await, 2
 ἀξιο-στράτηγος, -ον: worthy of being a
 general, 1
 ἀρετή, ἡ: excellence, goodness, virtue, 1
 ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, 2
 ἐμαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: myself, 3

10 ἡμῖν: dat. ind. obj.
 ἀλλὰ ἴσως γὰρ: *but perhaps in fact...*;
 ἀλλὰ...γὰρ are distinct in meaning but
 emphasize the intervening word
 ταῦτα: *the same things*; crasis, τὰ αὐτὰ
 11 πρὸς...θεῶν: *by the gods*; in exclamation
 μὴ ἀναμένωμεν: *let us not...*; negative
 hortatory 1p subjunctive
 ἐφ(ι): *to...*; ἐπὶ
 12 παρακαλοῦντας: *intending to summon*
 (*us*); likely fut. pple suggesting purpose
 the pple modifies ἄλλους
 ἐπὶ: *to...*
 ἄρξωμεν: *let...*; hortatory 1p aor. subj.
 13 τοῦ ἐξορμῆσαι: articular aor. inf.,
 partitive gen. is often the object of a verb of
 beginning such as ἀρχω + gen.
 καί: *also, even*; adverbial

ἐν-θυμέομαι: take to heart, consider, ponder 4
 ἐξ-ορμάω: to send forth, set out (from), 2
 ἐρύκω: to restrain, keep in, curb, 1
 ἡλικία, ἡ: age, time of life, 2
 παρα-καλέω: to summon, call to, 5
 προ-φασίζομαι: allege (as an excuse), 1
 τάττω: draw up, post, form for battle, 6

ἐπὶ: *toward...*
 φάνητε: *show yourselves!*; 'appear,' 2p
 aor. pass. deponent imperative φαίνω
 τῶν λοχαγῶν: partitive gen.
 14 ἄριστοι: predicate nom. with φάνητε
 τῶν στρατηγῶν: gen. of comparison
 15 κἀγώ: καὶ ἐγώ
 ἐπὶ ταῦτα: *toward these things*
 16 τάττετε(ε): 2p pres. indicative
 ἡγεῖσθαι: *to be a leader*
 οὐδὲν: *not at all*; adverbial acc.; Xenophon
 promises not to use his young age as an
 excuse. If born in 430, Xenophon is now 29
 or 30 years old.
 17 καί: adverbial
 ἡγοῦμαι (ἐμὲ): *I believe that (I)...*;
 governing ind. disc.; supply acc. subject
 ἐρύκειν: complementary inf. of ἀκμάζειν

26 ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ δὲ ἀρχηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἠγεῖσθαι
 ἐκέλευον πάντες, πλὴν Ἀπολλωνίδης τις ἦν βοιωτιάζων τῇ 20
 φωνῇ· οὗτος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι φλυαροῖη ὅστις λέγει ἄλλως πως
 σωτηρίας ἂν τυχεῖν ἢ βασιλέα πείσας, εἰ δύναίτο, καὶ ἅμα
 ἤρχετο λέγειν τὰς ἀπορίας. ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν μεταξύ
 ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν ὧδε. 27. ὦ θαυμασιώτατε ἄνθρωπε, σύγε
 οὐδὲ ὀρῶν γιγνώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. ἐν ταύτῳ γε 25
 μέντοι ἦσθα τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεύς, ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἀπέθανε,
 μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ τούτῳ πέμπων ἐκέλευε παραδιδόναι τὰ
 ὄπλα. 28. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες, ἀλλ' ἐξοπλισάμενοι
 ἐλθόντες παρεσκησάμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ ἐποίησε πρέσβεις

ἀ-πορία, ἡ: difficulty, bewilderment, 5
 Ἀπολλωνίδης, ὁ: Apollonides, 1
 ἀρχηγός, ὁ: leader, officer, 1
 βοιωτιάζω: to speak Boeotian, 1
 ἐξ-οπλίζομαι: to arm fully, 1
 θαυμάσιος, -α, -ον: amazing, wonderful, 1
 μεταξύ: between, in the middle, 2
 μιμήσκω: to recall, remember, 2
 ὅτε: when, at some time, 7
 παρα-δίδωμι: to hand over, give over, 3
 παρα-σκηνάω: to pitch a camp beside, 1

πειθω: to persuade, trust; *mid.* obey, 4
 πέμπω: send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 2
 πλὴν: except, but (+ gen.), 3
 πρέσβυς, -εως, ὁ: old man; ambassador, 5
 πως: somehow, in any way, 3
 σωτηρία, ἡ: deliverance, safety, security, 6
 ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 2
 φλυαρέω: talk nonsense, play a fool, 2
 φρονέω: to think, to be wise, prudent, 1
 φωνή, ἡ: speech, voice, 1
 ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 7

19 ὁ μὲν: *and he*; i.e. Xenophon
 ἔλεξεν: aor. λέγω
 ἠγεῖσθαι: *that he...*; supply αὐτὸν as an
 acc. subject, governed by ἐκέλευον
 20 ἦν: *there was...*
 τῇ φωνῇ: *in dialect*; dat. of manner
 21 εἶπεν: aor. λέγω
 φλυαροῖη: 3s opt. in ind. disc. in
 secondary seq.; translate as simple past
 ὅστις: *anyone who*; relative clause, the
 antecedent is subject of φλυαροῖη
 ἄλλως πως: *in some other way*
 22 τυχεῖν: *he would attain*; + partitive gen.);
 aor. inf. τυγχάνω + ἂν is here equiv. to
 potential opt. in direct speech
 ἢ: *than...*; following ἄλλως
 πείσας: *by...*; aor. pple. is causal in sense
 εἰ δύναίτο: *if he should...*; opt., protasis in
 a future less vivid (εἰ + opt., ἂν + inf.)

24 ὑπολαβὼν: aor. pple
 θαυμασιώτατε: superlative, voc. d.a.
 ἄνθρωπε: vocative, direct address
 σύγε: *you for your part*; σύ γε
 25 οὐδὲ...οὐδὲ: *neither...nor*
 μέμνησαι: 2s pf. μιμήσκω, pres. sense
 ἐν ταύτῳ γε...τούτοις: *in the same*
 (*place*) *in fact as these (men)*; τῷ αὐτῷ,
 'the same,' governs a dat.; γε is emphatic
 26 ἦσθα: 2s impf.. εἰμί
 ἀπέθανε: aor. ἀποθνήσκω
 27 μέγα φρονήσας: *thinking arrogantly*;
 'thinking big thoughts;' a common idiom,
 μέγα is an inner acc.
 ἐπὶ τούτῳ: *at this event, on this occasion*
 παραδιδόναι: *that (our men)...*; ind. disc.,
 add. subject
 28 παραδόντες, ἐλθόντες: aor. pples.
 29 τί...ἐποίησε: *What did he not do...?*

πέμπων καὶ σπονδὰς αἰτῶν καὶ παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἔστε 1
 σπονδῶν ἔτυχεν; 29. ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὥσπερ
 δὴ σὺ κελεύεις, εἰς λόγους αὐτοῖς ἄνευ ὄπλων ἦλθον πιστεύ-
 σαντες ταῖς σπονδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκεῖνοι παιόμενοι, κεντούμενοι,
 ὑβριζόμενοι οὐδὲ ἀποθανεῖν οἱ τλήμονες δύνανται, καὶ μάλ' 5
 οἶμαι ἐρῶντες τούτου; ἃ σὺ πάντα εἰδὼς τοὺς μὲν ἀμύνασθαι
 κελεύοντας φλυαρεῖν φῆς, πείθειν δὲ πάλιν κελεύεις ἰόντας;
 30. ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ τὸν ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον μήτε προσίεσθαι
 εἰς ταῦτο ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ἀφελομένους τε τὴν λοχαγίαν σκευή

αἰτέω: to ask, ask for, beg, 2
 ἀμύνομαι: to ward off, keep off, defend, 2
 ἄνευ: without (+ gen.), 2
 αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 5
 ἀφ-αίρω: to take away from, remove, 2
 ἐράω: to love, desire, long for (gen.) 1
 ἔστε: ἔσ-οτε until, up to the time that, 6
 κεντέω: to torture, prick; spur on, 1
 λόγος, ὄ: word, speech, account, argument 3
 λοχαγία, ἡ: office of captain, captain, 1
 μάλα: very (much), quite, exceedingly, 5

μή-τε: and not, 3
 παίω: to strike, smite, 3
 παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 6
 πείθω: to persuade, trust; *mid.* obey, 4
 πέμπω: send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 2
 πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on (dat.) 1
 προσ-ίημι: to send to; allow; undertake, 1
 σκεῦος, -εος, τό: equipment, baggage, 2
 τλήμων, -ονες, ὄ, ἡ: suffering, wretched, 1
 ὑβρίζω: to commit outrage, insult, maltreat, 2
 φλυαρέω: talk nonsense, play a fool, 2

1 πέμπων: πρέσβεις is acc. pl. object
 2 ἔτυχεν: *attained*; + partitive gen.; aor. τυγχανω; σπονδῶν is gen., not a pple ὥσπερ δὴ: *in exactly the way, in just the way*; δὴ is intensive;
 3 εἰς λόγους: i.e. to the conference αὐτοῖς: *with them*; dat. of association
 4 οὐ νῦν...οὐδέ: *are they not now...even?*; begins a question expecting a 'yes' reply παιόμενοι...ὑβριζόμενοι: i.e. tortured; passive pples., ἐκεῖνοι refers to the Greek στρατηγοὶ and λοχαγοί
 5 οὐδέ: *even*; 'not even' modifies ἀποθανεῖν καὶ...ἐρῶντες: *although...*; 'even,' καὶ introduces a concessive participle
 6 οἶμαι: οἴομαι, parenthetical τούτου: i.e. death; objective gen. ἃ...πάντα: *all which things...*; relative εἰδὼς: nom. sg. pf. pple οἶδα: pres. sense τοὺς...κελεύοντας: *that those...*; acc. subj.

of φλυαρεῖν in ind. disc.f
 7 φῆς: *you propose*; 2s φημί (ἡμᾶς) πείθειν: *that (we) try to persuade*; πάλιν...ἰόντας: pple. ἔρχομαι; Xenophon suggests that the Boeotian's proposal is to do the same thing which led to the torture of their leaders before
 8 ὦ ἄνδρες: voc., dir. address; Xenophon was addressing the Boeotian and now addresses the other men δοκεῖ: *it seems best* τὸν ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον: obj. of the inf., referring to the Boeotian προσίεσθαι: *to admit*; mid. inf. προσίημι
 9 εἰς ταῦτο: *the same (company)*; τὸ αὐτὸ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς: *as ourselves*; dat. with special adjective τὸ αὐτὸ, 'same as...' ἀφελομένους...λοχαγίαν: *and...*; aor. mid. pple. ἀφαίρω

ἀναθέντας ὡς τοιούτῳ χρῆσθαι. οὗτος γὰρ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα 10
καταισχύνει καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι Ἕλληνας ὧν τοιοῦτός
ἐστίν.’ 31 ἐντεῦθεν ὑπολαβὼν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν·
‘ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας προσήκει οὐδὲν οὔτε τῆς
Ἑλλάδος παντάπασιν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν εἶδον ὥσπερ Λυδὸν
ἀμφοτέρα τὰ ὦτα τετρυπημένον. 32. καὶ εἶχεν οὕτως. τοῦτον 15
μὲν οὖν ἀπήλασαν· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὰς τάξεις ἰόντες, ὅπου
μὲν στρατηγὸς σῶος εἶη, τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν, ὅπῃθεν
δὲ οἴχοιτο, τὸν ὑποστράτηγον, ὅπου δ’ αὖ λοχαγὸς σῶος εἶη,

Ἀγασίας, ὁ: Agasias, 1
ἀμφοτέρος, -α, -ον: each of two, both, 1
ἀνα-τίθημι: to set upon, dedicate, attribute 1
ἀπ-ελαύνω: to drive away, expel from, 2
αὔ: again, once more; further, moreover, 5
Βοιωτία, ἡ: Boeotia, 1
Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ: Greece, Hellas, 7
ἐντεῦθεν: from here, from there, 5
κατ-αισχύνω: to dishonor, put to shame, 2
Λυδός, ὁ: Lydian, 1
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 3
ὅπο-θεν: whence, from what place, 1
ὅπου: where, 5

10 ἀναθέντας: aor. act. pple. ἀνατίθημι +
neut pl. acc. σκεύε-α; Xenophon suggests
that the Greeks treat the Boeotian as an
animal and set packs on his back
ὡς τοιούτῳ: *as such*; i.e. a pack animal
χρῆσθαι (δοκεῖ): inf. χρᾶσθαι + dat.
καί...καί: *both...and*
τὴν πατρίδα: i.e. Boeotia
11 ὅτι: *because*
ὧν: nom. sg. pple εἰμί
ὑπολαβὼν: nom. sg. aor. pple
εἶπεν: aor. λέγω
13 ἀλλά...γε: *but...at any rate*; γε restricts
the intervening dat. τούτῳ
τούτῳ...Ἑλλάδος: *but neither anything of
Boeotia nor of Greece concerns this one*;
partitive genitives
14 αὐτὸν: i.e. the Boeotian
εἶδον: aor. ὁράω
ὥσπερ Λυδὸν: *just as a Lydian*; Lydia is

οὔς, ὥτος, τό: ear, 1
παντά-πασιν: all in all, altogether, entirely, 3
παρα-καλέω: to summon, call to, 5
παρὰ: from, at, to the side of, in respect to, 6
πατρίς, -ίδος: fatherland, native land, 3
προσ-ήκω: come to; belongs to/concerns dat
4
Στυμφάλιος, -α, -ον: the Stymphalian, 1
σῶος, -α, -ον: alive, safe, sound, 2
τρυπάω: to pierce through, bore, 1
ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 2
ὑπο-στράτηγος, ὁ: lieutenant-general, 1

in Asia Minor
15 ἀμφοτέρα τὰ ὦτα: *in...*; acc. respect, οὔς
τετρυπημένον: pf. pass. τρυπάω
εἶχεν οὕτως: ἔχω ('is disposed,' 'holds')
+ adv. can be translated as εἰμί + predicate
adjective; impf. ἔχω
16 ἀπήλασαν: 3p aor. ἀπελαύνω (ελα-)
παρὰ: *to/along side...*; acc. place to which
ἰόντες: pple ἔρχομαι
ὅπου...εἶη: *wherever...*; opt. εἰμί in a past
general relative clause; i.e. those generals
that survived survived
17 παρεκάλουν: *would...*; iterative impf.
ὅπῃθεν...οἴχοιτο: *from wherever the
general has gone*; i.e. had died; opt.
οἴχομαι in a past general relative clause
18 ὅπου...εἶη: *wherever...*; opt. εἰμί in a past
general relative clause; i.e. those second in
command were promoted

τὸν λοχαγόν. 33. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες συνήλθον, εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν τῶν
 ὄπλων ἐκαθέζοντο· καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ συνελθόντες στρατηγοὶ 20
 καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν. ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, σχεδὸν
 μέσαι ἦσαν νύκτες. 34. ἐνταῦθα Ἱερώνυμος Ἡλείος πρεσβύ-
 τatos ὦν τῶν Προξένου λοχαγῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν ᾧδε. ‘ἡμῖν,
 ᾧ ἄνδρες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὀρώσι τὰ παρόντα ἔδοξε
 καὶ αὐτοῖς συνελθεῖν καὶ ὑμᾶς παρακαλέσαι, ὅπως βουλευ- 25
 σαίμεθα εἴ τι δυναίμεθα ἀγαθόν. λέξον δ’,’ ἔφη, ‘καὶ σύ, ᾧ
 Ξενοφῶν, ἅπερ καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς.’ 35. ἐκ τούτου λέγει τάδε Ξενο-
 φῶν. ‘ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς
 καὶ Τισσαφέρνης οὓς μὲν ἐδυνήθησαν συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν,
 τοῖς δ’ ἄλλοις δῆλον ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύουσιν, ὡς, ἦν δύνωνται, 30

ἀμφί: on both sides, 6

βουλεύω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 6

δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 5

ἑκατόν: a hundred, 4

ἐπι-βουλεύω: to plot or contrive against, 2

Ἡλείος, -α, -ον: Elean, of Elea, 1

Ἱερώνυμος, ὁ: Hieronymus, 1

καθ-έζομαι: to sit down, settle, 1

ᾧδε, ἦδε, τόδε: this, this here, 4

ὅσπερ, ἦπερ, ὅπερ: very one who, which, 5

ὅτε: when, at some time, 7

πάρ-εimi: to be near, be present, be at hand, 7

παρα-καλέω: to summon, call to, 5

πρέσβυς, -εως, ὁ: old man; ambassador, 5

Πρόξενος, ὁ: Proxenus, 7

συλ-λαμβάνω: to seize, gather; help, 4

σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 2

ᾧδε: in this way, so, thus, 7

19 συνήλθον: aor. συνέρχομαι

εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν: *to the front of...*; ὄπλων
 can refer to the camp or the weapons

21 ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν: *about 100 men*

ἦν: *were the case*; 3p subject

22 μέσαι...νύκτες: translate as sg.

ἦσαν: 3p impf. εἰμί

πρεσβύτατος: *eldest*

ὦν: nom. sg. aor. ppl. εἰμί

23 ἡμῖν: dat. of reference with aor. ἔδοξε

24 ὀρώσι: ὀρά-ουσι, dat. pl. ppl. modifies

ἡμῖν and takes τὰ παρόντα as object

τὰ παρόντα: (*things*)...; ppl

25 καί...καί: *both...and...*

αὐτοῖς: intensive pronoun with ἡμῖν

παρακαλέσαι: aor. inf.

ὅπως: *so that...might*; purpose, aor. opt. in
 secondary sequence

26 εἴ τι δυναίμεθα ἀγαθόν: *some good...*; τι

ἀγαθόν is the obj. of βουλευσαίμεθα

λέξον: aor. imperative λέγω

ἔφη: impf. φημί

27 ἅπερ (εἴπες): *the very things which (you
 said)...*; ellipsis, supply a verb

28 ἀλλά: *well*; ‘well now,’ Xenophon opens
 a number of speeches in this way

δῆ: *exactly, precisely*; modifying ταῦτα

ὅτι: (*namely*) *that*; in apposition to ταῦτα

29 οὓς...ἐδυνήθησαν: *as many as they were
 able (to seize)*; aor. pass. dep. δύναμαι

συνειλήφασιν: 3p pf. συλλαμβάνω

ἡμῶν: partitive gen. with οὓς

30 τοῖς δ’ ἄλλοις: *against...*; dat. of

compound verb, ἐπιβουλεύουσιν

δῆλον ὅτι: *clearly*; ‘it is clear that’

ὡς...ἀπολέσωσιν: *so that...might...*;
 purpose (unusual with ὡς in prose)

ἦν: *if...*; ἐάν + pres. subj.

ἀπολέσωσιν. ἡμῖν δέ γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα ὡς μήποτε 1
 ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις γενώμεθα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκείνοι ἐφ' ἡμῖν.
 36. εὖ τοίνυν ἐπίστασθε ὅτι ὑμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες ὅσοι νῦν συνελη-
 λύθατε μέγιστον ἔχετε καιρόν. οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὗτοι
 πάντες πρὸς ὑμᾶς βλέπουσι, κἂν μὲν ὑμᾶς ὀρώσιν ἀθύμους, 5
 πάντες κακοὶ ἔσονται, ἣν δὲ ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ τε παρασκευαζόμενοι
 φανεροὶ ᾗτε ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλῆτε,
 εὖ ἴστε ὅτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν καὶ πειράσονται μιμείσθαι. 37. ἴσως
 δέ τοι καὶ δίκαιόν ἐστιν ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων. ὑμεῖς γάρ

ἀ-θυμός, -όν: fainthearted, spiritless, 4
 ἀπ-όλλυμι: destroy, lose; *mid.* perish, 7
 βλέπτω: to look, look at, gaze, 1
 δια-φέρω: carry over; differ; surpass, 2
 δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right, lawful, fair, 2
 εὖ: well, 2
 καιρός, ὄ: time, right moment, opportunity, 3
 μέγιστος, -η, -ον: greatest, mightiest, 3
 μή-ποτε: not ever, never, 2

μιμέομαι: to mimic, imitate, represent, 1
 παρα-καλέω: to summon, call to, 5
 παρασκευάζω: to prepare, get ready, 3
 ποιητέος, -ον: to be made, to be done, 2
 τοί-νυν: well then; therefore, accordingly, 4
 τοι: you know, let me tell you, 2
 τοσοῦτος, -αυτή, -οῦτο: so great, so much,
 so many, 7
 φανερός, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 3

- 1 ἀπολέσωσιν: aor. subj., purpose or effort with subj. instead of fut.: add 'us' as object ἡμῖν: *by...*; dat. of agent, as often, with verbal adj. ποιητέα
 οἶμαι: οἶομαι, parenthetical
 ποιητέα (ἐστί): *must be...*; '(are) to be done,' verbal adj. + εἰμί expresses necessity here with neuter pl. subject, dat. of agent
 ὡς...γενώμεθα: *that...*; purpose clause with aor. subj. (unusual with ὡς in prose except in Xenophon)
 2 ἐπὶ...βαρβάροις: *in the hands/power of...*
 ἐφ' ἡμῖν: (*come to be*) *in our control/power*
 3 τοσοῦτοι...ὅσοι: *as many as...*; 'so many...as many as...' correlatives
 συνεληλύθατε: 2p pf. συνέρχομαι
 5 κἂν...ὀρώσιν...ἔσονται: *and if...*; καὶ ἔαν in a future more vivid condition (ἔαν + subj., fut); ὀρώω, fut. εἰμί
 ἀθύμους: predicate acc.
 6 ἣν...ᾗτε...παρακαλῆτε, ἔψονται: *if...*; ἔάν,

- a second future more vivid condition; 2s pres. subj. εἰμί
 τε...καί...: *both...and*; conjoining the two verbs
 ὑμεῖς αὐτοί: intensive
 7 φανεροὶ ᾗτε: *you are clearly* + pple.; idiom
 ἐπὶ: *against...*
 παρακαλῆτε: supply παρασκευάζεσθαι
 8 ἴστε: pl. imperative οἶδα
 ἔψονται: fut. ἔπομαι + dat.
 πειράσονται: fut. mid. πειράω
 μιμείσθαι: add ὑμᾶς
 9 τοι: *you know*; or 'to be sure' as a particle
 δίκαιόν ἐστιν: *it is...*
 τι: *somewhat*; or 'in some way,' inner acc.
 τούτων: *from...*; gen. of comparison with διαφέρειν which can carry the sense of 'differ' or, as in this case, 'excel' or 'surpass'

ἔστε στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρχοι καὶ λοχαγοί· καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη 10
 ἦν, ὑμεῖς καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς τούτων ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε· καὶ
 νῦν τοῖνυν ἐπεὶ πόλεμος ἔστιν, ἀξιοῦν δεῖ ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἀμείνους
 τε τοῦ πλήθους εἶναι καὶ προβουλεύειν τούτων καὶ προπονεῖν,
 ἣν που δέη. 38. καὶ νῦν πρῶτον μὲν οἶομαι ἂν ὑμᾶς μέγα
 ὠφελῆσαι τὸ στράτευμα, εἰ ἐπιμεληθείητε ὅπως ἀντὶ τῶν 15
 ἀπολωλότων ὡς τάχιστα στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀντικατα-
 σταθῶσιν. ἄνευ γὰρ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν ἂν οὔτε καλὸν οὔτε
 ἀγαθὸν γένοιτο ὡς μὲν συνελόντι εἰπεῖν οὐδαμοῦ, ἐν δὲ δὴ

ἀμείνων, -ον: better, nobler, braver, 4
 ἄνευ: without (+ gen.), 2
 ἀντι-καθ-ίστημι: to appoint in place of, 1
 ἀξιώω: deem worthy, think, 2
 ἀπ-όλλυμι: destroy, lose; *mid.* perish, 7
 δεῖ: it is necessary, must, ought (+ inf.), 26
 εἰρήνη, ἡ: peace, 1
 ἐπι-μέλ(ε)ομαι: to care for, look after, 3
 ὅτε: when, at some time, 7
 οὐδαμ-οῦ: nowhere, 1
 πλεον-εκτέω: to have advantage, more of, 1

10 ἔστε: 2p pres. εἰμί
 ἦν: *there was*
 11 καὶ χρημασι...καὶ τιμαῖς: *both in...and in...*; dat. of respect
 τούτων: gen. of comparison with verb
 12 ἀξιοῦν: inf. o-contract verb
 ὑμᾶς αὐτούς: *yourselves*; obj. of ἀξιοῦν
 ἀμείνους: ἀμείνο(ν)ες; predicate acc. of εἶναι
 εἶναι, προβουλεύειν, προπονεῖν: all governed by ἀξιοῦν
 13 τοῦ πλήθους: *than...*; gen. of comparison
 τούτων: gen. governed by the prefix προ- 'on behalf of' of both infinitives
 14 ἦν...δέη: *if...*; 2s subj. δεῖ
 πρῶτον: adverbial acc.
 ἂν...ὠφελῆσαι, εἰ ἐπιμεληθείητε: *that you would..., if you should...*; future less vivid in ind. disc.; aor. inf. + ἂν is equivalent to ἂν + opt in direct disc.

πλήθος, ἡ: crowd, multitude; size, 3
 που: anywhere, somewhere; I suppose, 3
 προ-βουλεύω: deliberate on behalf of (gen) 1
 προ-πονέω: to work on behalf of (gen), 1
 συν-αιρέω: to grasp, seize together, 1
 ταξίαρχος, τό: taxiarch, commander, 1
 τιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 1
 τοί-νυν: well then; therefore, accordingly, 4
 χρήμα, -ατος, τό: money, goods, 2
 ὠφελέω: to help, to be of use, benefit, 2

μέγα: *greatly*; 'a great benefit'; inner acc. of ὠφελῆσαι; στράτευμα is acc. obj.
 15 ἐπιμεληθείητε: aor. pass. dep. opt., a protasis in a future less vivid condition
 ὅπως...ἀντικατασταθῶσιν: *that...are appointed...*; effort clause with aor. pass. subj. instead of fut. ind., ἀντικαθίστημι
 ἀντὶ: *in place of...*
 16 ἀπολωλότων: pf. act. pple ἀπόλλυμι
 ὡς τάχιστα: *as quickly as possible*
 17 ἀρχόντων: *leaders*; 'those leading'
 οὐδὲν...οὔτε...οὔτε: *nothing either...or*
 ἂν...γένοιτο: *would...*; potential aor. opt.
 οὐδαμοῦ: *anywhere*; following οὐδὲν
 18 ὡς...εἰπεῖν: *so to speak concisely*; 'so to speak for one taking (it) together' dat. sg. aor. pple ἀναίρεω is often translated as an adverb
 δὴ: *certainly (not)...*; supply the negative

τοῖς πολεμικοῖς παντάπασιν. ἡ μὲν γὰρ εὐταξία σώζειν
δοκεῖ, ἡ δὲ ἀταξία πολλοὺς ἤδη ἀπολώλεκεν. 39. ἐπειδὴν δὲ 20
καταστήσησθε τοὺς ἄρχοντας ὅσους δεῖ, ἦν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
στρατιώτας συλλέγητε καὶ παραθαρρύνητε, οἶμαι ἂν ὑμᾶς
πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ ποιήσαι. 40. νῦν γὰρ ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αισθάνεσθε
ὡς ἀθύμως μὲν ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα, ἀθύμως δὲ πρὸς τὰς
φυλακάς· ὥστε οὕτω γ' ἐχόντων οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι ἂν τις χρήσαιτο 25
αὐτοῖς, εἴτε νυκτὸς δεοὶ εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. 41 ἦν δέ τις αὐτῶν
τρέψη τὰς γνώμας, ὡς μὴ τοῦτο μόνον ἐννοῶνται, τί πείσονται,
ἀλλὰ καὶ τί ποιήσουσι, πολὺ εὐθυμότεροι ἔσονται. 42. ἐπί-

ἀ-θυμός, -όν: fainthearted, spiritless, 4
ἀ-ταξία, ἡ: want of discipline, disorder, 2
αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 1
ἀπ-όλλυμι: destroy, lose; *mid.* perish, 7
γνώμη, ἡ: mind, purpose, intention, 1
εἴτε: either...or; whether...or, 4
ἐν-νοέω: to be anxious; consider, reflect, 5
ἐπειδὴν: whenever, 1
εὐ-θυμος, -ον: of good heart, cheerful, 1
εὐ-ταξία, ἡ: discipline, good order, 1

19 σώζειν: *to make us safe, make us secure*

20 ἀπολώλεκεν: pf. act. ἀπ-όλλυμι

21 ἄρχοντας: *leaders*

δεῖ: *it is necessary (to appoint)*

ἦν...παραθαρρύνητε: *if...*; ἐάν + present subj., mixed condition

οἶμαι: οἶομαι

22 ἂν...ποιήσαι: *that...would act*; aor. inf + ἂν equiv. to potential opt. in dir. speech

ἐν καιρῷ: *at the right time, timely*

24 ὡς: *how...*; modifying ἀθύμως

ἐπὶ: *to...*; acc. place to which

25 (αὐτῶν) οὕτω γ' ἐχόντων: *at least (while they) are so*; gen. absolute, supply αὐτῶν; ἔχω ('is disposed,' 'holds') + adv. can be translated as εἰμί + adj.

ὅ τι...χρήσαιτο: *what use one would...*;

ὅ τι is an interrogative and inner acc., potential opt. governs a dative

καθ-ίστημι: set down; appoint, station, 5
καιρός, ὁ: time, right moment, opportunity, 3
μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 5
παντά-πασιν: all in all, altogether, entirely, 3
πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 4
παρα-θαρρύνω: to encourage, embolden, 1
πολεμικός, -ή, -όν: warlike, of war; war, 3
συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 1
τρέπω: to turn, change, 3
φυλακή, ἡ: a watch, guard, 1

26 νυκτὸς, ἡμέρας: *during...*; gen. time within

δεοὶ (χρᾶσθαι αὐτοῖς): *it should be necessary (to make use of them)*; opt. δεῖ, protasis in a future less vivid condition

ἦν...τρέψη, ...ἔσονται: *if...*; ἐάν, future more vivid (ἐάν + subj., fut.); 3s aor. subj. τρέπω and fut. dep. εἰμί

αὐτῶν...τὰς γνώμας: *their thoughts*; i.e. the minds of the fainthearted

26 ὡς μὴ...ἐννοῶνται: *so that...*; neg. \ purpose clause with pres. subj.

27 τί πείσονται...ποιήσουσι: *what...*; ind. questions; fut. dep. πάσχω and act ποιέω

28 πολὺ: *much*; or 'far,' adverbial acc. (acc. of degree of extent)

εὐθυμότεροι: comparative

28 ἔσονται: fut. deponent εἰμί

στασθε γὰρ δὴ ὅτι οὔτε πληθὸς ἔστιν οὔτε ἰσχὺς ἢ ἐν τῷ 1
πολέμῳ τὰς νίκας ποιούσα, ἀλλ' ὁπότεροι ἂν σὺν τοῖς
θεοῖς ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἔρρωμενέστεροι ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους,
τούτους ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἀντίοι οὐ δέχονται. 43. ἐντεθύμημαι
δ' ἔγωγε, ᾧ ἄνδρες, καὶ τοῦτο, ὅτι ὁπόσοι μὲν μαστεύουσι 5
ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς, οὗτοι μὲν κακῶς τε
καὶ αἰσχρῶς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἀποθνήσκουσιν, ὁπόσοι δὲ τὸν
μὲν θάνατον ἐγνώκασι πᾶσι κοινὸν εἶναι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον
ἀνθρώποις, περὶ δὲ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνήσκειν ἀγωνίζονται,

ἀγωνίζομαι: to contend, compete, fight, 2

αἰσχρὸς, -ά, -όν: shameful, disgraceful, 1

ἀναγκαῖος, -η, -ον: necessary, inevitable, 2

ἀντίος, -α, -ον: face to face, facing opposite

1

δέχομαι: to receive, accept, 4

ἔγωγε: I, for my part, 4

ἐν-θυμέομαι: take to heart, consider, ponder,

4

ἔρρωμένος, -η, -ον: stout, in good health, 1

ζάω: to live, 5

θάνατος, ὁ: death, 1

ἰσχὺς, -ύος, ὁ: strength, might, power, 1

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, shared; public, 4

μαστεύω: to seek, strive; crave, 1

νίκη, ἡ: victory in battle, 3

ὁπόσος, -α, -ον: as much/many/great as, 6

ὁπότερος, -η, -ον: which (of two), 3

πληθός, ἡ: crowd, multitude; size, 3

πολεμικός, -ή, -όν: warlike, of war; war, 3

τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 3

ψυχή, ἡ: breath, life, spirit, soul, 3

1 ἐπίστασθε: 2p pres.

δὴ: *of course, naturally*; an obvious point

ὅτι: *that...*; ind. disc.

πληθός, ἰσχὺς: pred. adjectives

2 ἡ...ποιούσα: *the thing making...*

ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ: *in the war*; Xenophon

refers to the Persian war in 480 BC

2 ὁπότεροι...ἴωσιν: *but whichever...*;

general relative clause (ἄν + subj.), 3p pres.

subj. ἔρχομαι (-ι); the antecedent is the

following τούτους

3 ταῖς ψυχαῖς: *in...*; dat. of respect

ἐπὶ: *against*

4 ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ: *so as for the most part*; i.e.

generally

οἱ ἀντίοι: *the opposing (enemy)*

δέχομαι: i.e. fight well against

ἐντεθύμημαι: pf. mid. ἐν-θυμέομαι ; pf.

denotes a state instead of activity

5 ὅτι: (*namely*) *that...*; in apposition to

τούτο

6 ζῆν: *to stay alive*; inf. ζάω

ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου: *in any way (they can)*

ἐν: *among*

7 ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ: *for the most part*; i.e.

generally

τὸν θάνατον...: *that death...*; acc. subject

of εἶναι, inf. of εἶμί; κοινὸν and ἀναγκαῖον

are acc. predicates

8 ἐγνώκασι: 3p pf. γιγνώσκω

πᾶσι...ἀνθρώποις: dat. of interest, πᾶς

9 τοῦ...ἀποθνήσκειν: articular inf., genitive

obj. of περὶ

τούτους ὀρώ μᾶλλον πως εἰς τὸ γῆρας ἀφικνουμένους καὶ 10
 ἕως ἂν ζώσιν εὐδαιμονέστερον διάγοντας. 44. ἃ καὶ ὑμᾶς δεῖ νῦν
 καταμαθόντας (ἐν τοιούτῳ γὰρ καιρῷ ἔσμεν) αὐτούς τε ἄνδρας
 ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλεῖν.’ 45. ὁ μὲν ταῦτα
 εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον εἶπε Χειρίσοφος· ‘ἀλλὰ 15
 πρόσθεν μὲν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τοσοῦτον μόνον σε ἐγίγνωσκον
 ὅσον ἤκουον Ἀθηναῖον εἶναι, νῦν δὲ καὶ ἐπαινώ σε ἐφ’ οἷς
 λέγεις τε καὶ πράττεις καὶ βουλοίμην ἂν ὅτι πλείστους εἶναι
 τοιούτους· κοινὸν γὰρ ἂν εἶη τὸ ἀγαθόν. 46. καὶ νῦν, ἔφη,

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6
 ἀφ-ικνεόμαι: to come, arrive, 7
 γῆρας, -ατος, τό: old age, 1
 δι-άγω: lead across; pass life; delay, 3
 ἐπαινέω: to praise, commend, 1
 εὐ-δαιμών, -ον: happy, fortunate, blessed, 3
 ἕως: until, as long as, 2
 ζάω: to live, 5
 καιρός, ὁ: time, right moment, opportunity, 3
 κατα-μανθάνω: to learn thoroughly,
 discover, find, 1

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, shared; public, 4
 μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 4
 μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 5
 παρα-καλέω: to summon, call to, 5
 παύω: to stop, make cease, 3
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, very many, 4
 πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 5
 πως: somehow, in any way, 3
 τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: so great, so much,
 so many, 7

10 μᾶλλον: *more likely*

11 ἕως ἂν ζώσιν: general temporal clause,
 3s pres. ζάω

εὐδαιμονέστερον: comparative adverb
 ἃ: *which things*; i.e. the lessons from the
 past; relative pronoun, object of
 καταμαθόντας .

ὑμᾶς: *that you...*; acc. subject of both inf.

12 ἔσμεν: 1p pres.. εἰμί

αὐτούς: intensive pronoun with ὑμᾶς

13 τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλεῖν: supply ἄνδρας
 ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι.

14 εἰπὼν: nom. sg. 2nd aor. pple, εἶπον

ἐπαύσατο: aor. mid. παύω and
 complementary pple λέγω

εἶπε: aor. λέγω

ἀλλὰ: *well*; or ‘well now,’ compare the
 way Xenophon opens his speech at III.1.35

15 τοσοῦτον μόνον... ὅσον: *only so much*

as...; correlatives, τοσοῦτον is the object
 of the main verb

σε... Ἀθηναῖον εἶναι: (*namely*) *that...*; ind.
 disc. in apposition to τοσοῦτον
 ἐγίγνωσκον: 1s impf.

16 ἐφ’ οἷς: *for (these things) which...*; ἐπὶ
 (τούτοις) ἃ; acc. pl. relative pronoun is
 attracted into the dative of the missing
 antecedent

17 βουλοίμην ἂν: *would...*; potential opt.
 governs an acc. + inf. construction

ὅτι πλείστους: *as many as possible*; ὅτι,
 just as ὥς, + superlative means ‘as X as
 possible;’ here it is a predicate of εἶναι

18 τοιούτους: i.e. such words and deeds; acc.
 subject

ἂν εἶη: potential opt. εἰμί

ἔφη: 3s impf. φημί

μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντες ἤδη αἰρεῖσθε οἱ
 δεόμενοι ἄρχοντας, καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἦκετε εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ 20
 στρατοπέδου καὶ τοὺς αἰρεθέντας ἄγετε· ἔπειτ' ἐκεῖ συγκα-
 λούμεν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας. παρέστω δ' ἡμῖν, ἔφη, καὶ
 Τολμίδης ὁ κήρυξ. 47. καὶ ἅμα ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀνέστη, ὡς μὴ
 μέλλοιτο ἀλλὰ περαίνοιτο τὰ δέοντα. ἐκ τούτου ἠρέθησαν
 ἄρχοντες ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου Τιμασίων Δαρδανεύς, ἀντὶ δὲ 25
 Σωκράτους Ξανθικλῆς Ἀχαιός, ἀντὶ δὲ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ
 Ἀρκάς, ἀντὶ δὲ Μένωνος Φιλήσιος Ἀχαιός, ἀντὶ δὲ Προξένου
 Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.

Ἄγιας, -ου ὁ: Agasias, 1
 ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 7
 Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6
 Ἀρκάς, Ἀρκάδος, ὁ: Arcadian, 2
 Ἀχαιός, -όν: Achaian, 2
 Δαρδανεύς, ὁ: a Dardanian, 1
 ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 2
 ἐπ-εἶτα: then, next, secondly, 4
 ἦκω: to have come, be present, 5
 κήρυξ, κήρυκος ὁ: messenger, herald, 1
 Κλεάνωρ, ὁ: Cleanor, 3
 Κλεάρχος, ὁ: Clearchus, 5
 μέλλω: to be about to, intend to; delay, 7

19 μὴ μέλλωμεν: *let us...*; hortatory subj.
 ἀπ-ελθόντες: aor. pple ἀπέρχομαι
 αἰρεῖσθε: pres. mid. of 'take' means
 'choose' (i.e. take for oneself)
 οἱ δεόμενοι: *you, the ones...*; modifies the
 2p subject; mid. pple. δέομαι
 20 ἄρχοντας: *leaders*
 ἐλόμενοι: aor. mid. pple αἰρέω, 'choose'
 (i.e. take for oneself)
 21 τοὺς αἰρεθέντας: *those...*; aor. pass. pple
 αἰρέω, 'choose' (i.e. take for oneself)
 ἄγετε: *bring*

Μένων, Μένωνος ὁ: Meno, 1
 Ξανθικλῆς, ὁ: Xanthicles, 1
 πάρ-ειμι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 7
 περαίνο: bring to an end, accomplish, 3
 Πρόξενος, ὁ: Proxenus, 7
 στρατόπεδον τό: camp, encampment; army
 2
 συγ-καλέω: to call together, assemble, 3
 Σωκράτης, -ους, ὁ: Socrates, 4
 Τιμασίων, ὁ: Timasion, 2
 Τολμίδης, ὁ: Tolmides, 2
 Φιλήσιος, ὁ: Philesius, 1

συγκαλούμεν: fut. (stem καλε-)
 παρέστω: *let...*; 3s imperative
 23 εἰπὼν: nom. sg. 2nd aor. pple; εἶπον
 ἀνέστη: 3s aor. ἀνίστημι
 24 ὡς μὴ μέλλοιτο: *so that...might*; purpose
 with opt. in secondary sequence
 δέοντα: i.e. what is necessary; pple. δεῖ
 ἐκ τούτου: *after this*; 'from this'
 ἠρέθησαν: 3p aor. pass. αἰρέω
 25 ἀντὶ: *in place of*
 Τιμασίων, Ξανθικλῆς...: all in apposition
 to nom. pl. ἄρχοντες

1. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρηντο, ἡμέρα τε σχεδὸν ὑπέφαινε καὶ εἰς τὸ 1
 μέσον ἦκον οἱ ἄρχοντες, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς προφυλακὰς κατα-
 στήσαντας συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ
 ἄλλοι στρατιῶται συνήλθον, ἀνέστη πρῶτος μὲν Χειρίσοφος
 ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. 2. ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, χαλεπὰ 5
 μὲν τὰ παρόντα, ὅποτε ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν τοιούτων στερό-
 μεθα καὶ λοχαγῶν καὶ στρατιωτῶν, πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ
 Ἄριαϊον οἱ πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι ὄντες προδεδώκασι ἡμᾶς·
 3. ὅμως δὲ δεῖ ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἀνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τελέθειν καὶ

ἀμφί: on both sides, 6

Ἄριαϊος, ὁ: Ariaeus, 3

ἦκω: to have come, be present, 5

καθ-ίστημι: set down; appoint, station, 5

Λακεδαιμόνιος, -η, -ον: Lacedaemonian, 3

ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 3

πάρ-ειμι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 7

προ-δίδωμι: to betray, give over, 4

προ-φυλακή, ἡ: front-guard, 1

στέρομαι: to be without, lack, 1

συγ-καλέω: to call together, assemble, 3

σύμ-μαχος, -ον: ally, co-fighter, 3

σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 2

τελέθω: to come to be, be fully; be, 1

ὑπο-φαίνω: to show slightly, break, 1

χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 4

ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 7

1 ἤρηντο: plpf. mid. αἰρέω, 'choose'

2 ἔδοξεν: *it seemed good*

4 συνήλθον: aor. συνέρχομαι

ἀνέστη: 3s aor. ἀνίστημι

5 ἔλεξεν: aor. λέγω

ἄνδρες στρατιῶται: *fellow-soldiers*; voc.
 direct address

6 τὰ παρόντα: i.e. present circumstances;

pple πάρειμι, supply ἐστί

ὅποτε: *since...*; causal

ἀνδρῶν...στρατιωτῶν: *from...*; gen. of

separation with main verb

7 πρὸς δ': *and in addition*; adverbial

οἱ...Ἀριαῖον: i.e. the soldiers under the
 command of Ariaeus

8 οἱ...ὄντες: *those...*; pres. pple εἰμί; in the
 attribute position with οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον;

προδεδώκασι: 3p pf. προδίδωμι

9 τῶν παρόντων: see τὰ παρόντα above

(ἡμᾶς) τελέθειν: *that (we)...*; ind. disc.,
 supply acc. subject

μη ὑφίεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως, ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα, καλῶς 10
 νικῶντες σωζώμεθα· εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν,
 ὑποχέριοι δὲ μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις.
 οἴομαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἷα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ
 ποιήσειαν.’ 4. ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἀνέστη καὶ
 ἔλεξεν ὧδε. ‘ἀλλ’ ὀρᾶτε μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τὴν βασιλέως 15
 ἐπιορκίαν καὶ ἀσέβειαν, ὀρᾶτε δὲ τὴν Τισσαφέρνους ἀπιστίαν,
 ὅστις λέγων ὡς γείτων τε εἶη τῆς Ἑλλάδος καὶ περὶ πλείστου
 ἂν ποιήσαιτο σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις αὐτὸς ὁμόσας ἡμῖν,

ἀ-πιστία, ἦ: mistrust, distrust, disbelief, 2

ἀ-σέβεια, ἦ: impiety, irreverence, 1

γείτων, -ονος, ὅ, ἦ: neighbor, borderer, 1

Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἦ: Greece, Hellas, 7

ἐπι-ορκία, ἦ: false swearing, perjury, 2

ἐχθρός, -ή, -όν: hated, hostile; *subst.* enemy, 2

ζάω: to live, 5

Κλεάνωρ, ὁ: Cleanor, 3

μηδέ-ποτε: never, 1

οἶος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 6

ἔμνημι: to swear (an oath) (aor. ἔμνησα), 1

Ὀρχομένιος, -α, -ον: Orchomenian, 1

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, very many, 4

ὑπο-χέριος, -ον: under control/power +dat. 1

ὑφ-ίημι: to send under, submit, give up, 3

ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 7

10 (ἡμᾶς) μη ὑφίεσθαι: *that (we)...*; supply acc. subject; pres. mid. inf. governed by δεῖ ὅπως...σωζώμεθα...: *that...we may save ourselves*; purpose with pres. subj.; the middle voice is reflexive in sense ἦν: ἔαν, and pres. subj.

καλῶς: *well*; modifies νικῶντες

11 ἀλλὰ...γε: *but at least...*; ‘but at any rate,’ emphasizing the intervening word ἀποθνήσκωμεν, γενώμεθα: *let us...*; pres. and aor. hortatory subj.

12 ὑποχέριοι...τοῖς πολεμίοις: *under the power of the enemy*; i.e. subject to the enemy; predicate noun governs a dat.

13 ἂν...παθεῖν: *would...*; ἂν + aor. inf. πάσχω is equivalent to potential opt. in direct disc.

τοιαῦτα...οἷα: *such things as*; ‘such things...which sort,’ correlatives, οἷα is inner acc. of ποιήσειαν

ὁ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν: *may the gods...!*; aor.

opt. of wish

14 ἐπὶ τούτῳ: *in addition to this*

ἀνέστη: 3s aor. ἀνίστημι

15 ἀλλὰ: *come!*; or ‘well then,’ here grabbing attention preceding an imperative

16 Τισσαφέρνους: Τισσαφέρνε-ος, gen. sg.

17 ὅστις: (*the one who...*); in apposition to Τισσαφέρνους.

ὡς...εἶη...: *that...he is...*; ind. discourse

follows λέγων with opt. in secondary seq.; the ind. disc. continues for several lines

περὶ πλείστου ἂν ποιήσαιτο: *he would consider of the greatest (importance)*; περὶ + gen. is a gen. of value often found with the mid. form ποιοῦμαι; here potential opt.

28 σῶσαι: aor. inf. σῶζω

ἐπὶ τούτοις: *on these (terms)*; or ‘conditions,’ common use of ἐπὶ + dat.

αὐτὸς: (*he*) *himself*; intensive pronoun

ὁμόσας: nom. sg. aor. pple ἔμνημι

αὐτὸς δεξιὰς δούς, αὐτὸς ἔξαπατήσας συνέλαβε τοὺς στρατη-
 γοὺς, καὶ οὐδὲ Δία ξένιον ἠδέσθη, ἀλλὰ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ ὀμοτρά- 20
 πεζος γενόμενος αὐτοῖς τούτοις ἔξαπατήσας τοὺς ἄνδρας
 ἀπολώλεκεν. 5. Ἄριαϊος δέ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν βασιλέα καθ-
 ιστάναι, καὶ ἐδώκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ προδώσειν
 ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος οὔτε τοὺς θεοὺς δείσας οὔτε Κύρον
 τεθνηκότα αἰδεσθεῖς, τιμώμενος μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζώντος 25
 νῦν πρὸς τοὺς ἐκείνου ἐχθίστους ἀποστὰς ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου
 φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν πειρᾶται. 6. ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οἱ θεοὶ
 ἀποτείσαιντο· ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ ταῦτα ὀρώντας μήποτε ἔξαπατη-
 θῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ μαχομένους ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα
 κράτιστα τοῦτο ὃ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς πάσχειν. 30

αἰδέομαι: be or feel ashamed before; respect 2
 ἀλλήλων: one another, 4
 ἀπο-όλλυμι: destroy, lose; *mid.* perish, 7
 ἀπο-τίνω: to pay back, avenge, punish, 1
 Ἄριαϊος, ὁ: Ariaeus, 3
 ἀφ-ίστημι: to revolt, make revolt, 2
 δέιδω: to fear, 4
 δεξιός, -ά, -όν: right (side); pledge, 2
 ἐξ-απατάω: to deceive thoroughly, 5
 ἐχθρός, -ή, -όν: hated, hostile; *subst.* enemy, 2
 ζάω: to live, 5
 Ζεὺς, ὁ: Zeus, 4
 θνήσκω: to die, 2
 καθ-ίστημι: set down; appoint, station, 5

Κλεάρχος, ὁ: Clearchus, 5
 κράτιστος, -η, -ον: strongest, mightiest, 5
 μάλιστα: most of all; certainly, especially, 1
 μάχομαι: to fight, contend, quarrel, dispute 7
 μή-ποτε: not ever, never, 2
 ξένιος, -α, -ον: of hospitality or friendship, 1
 ὀμο-τράπεζος, -ον: messmates, table
 companions, 1
 πιστός -ή -όν: trustworthy; credible (dat.), 2
 προ-δίδωμι: to betray, give over, 4
 συλ-λαμβάνω: to seize, gather; help, 4
 τιμάω: to honour, value, esteem, 1
 φίλος, -α, -ον: friendly, dear; friend, kin, 5

19 αὐτὸς: (*he*) *himself*; intensive pronoun,
 repeated for emphasis
 δεξιὰς: *pledges*; 'right hands'
 δούς: nom. sg. aor. ppl. δίδωμι
 ἔξαπατήσας: nom. sg. aor. ppl
 20 Δία: Zeus; acc. sg., Zeus enforced the
 guest-host relationship
 ἠδέσθη: 3s aor. pass. dep. αἰδέομαι
 ὀμοτράπεζος: predicate of γενόμενος
 21 αὐτοῖς τούτοις: *by these very things*; i.e.
 by the trickery above, dat. of means
 22 ἀπολώλεκεν: pf. act. ἀπόλλυμι
 καθιστάναι: *to appoint (x) as (y)*; inf.
 governs a double acc. (obj. and pred.)

23 ἐδώκαμεν...: aor. δίδωμι, λαμβάνω
 πιστὰ: *pledges*
 μὴ προδώσειν: *that (he)...*; ind. disc. with
 fut. inf. προδίδωμι
 δείσας: aor. ppl δέιδω
 25 τεθνηκότα: acc. sg. pf. ppl θνήσκω
 αἰδεσθεῖς: nom. sg. aor. dep. ppl
 ὑπὸ: *by...*; gen. of agent
 26 πρὸς: *against*
 ἀποστὰς: nom. sg. aor. ppl ἀφ-ίστημι
 27 κακῶς ποιεῖν: *to treat badly*
 ἔξαπατηθῆναι: aor. pass. inf. + gen. agent
 29 ὡς...κράτιστα: *as strongly as we can*
 30 πάσχειν: *that we suffer...*; governed by δεῖ

7. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ πόλεμον 1
ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα, νομίζων, εἴτε νίκην διδοῖεν οἱ θεοί,
τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον τῷ νικᾶν πρέπειν, εἴτε τελευτᾶν δέοι,
ὀρθῶς ἔχειν τῶν καλλίστων ἑαυτὸν ἀξιῶσαντα ἐν τούτοις
τῆς τελευτῆς τυγχάνειν· τοῦ λόγου δὲ ἤρχετο ὧδε. 8. ‘τὴν 5
μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιορκίαν τε καὶ ἀπιστίαν λέγει μὲν
Κλεάνωρ, ἐπίστασθε δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς οἶμαι. εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλό-
μεθα πάλιν αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλίας ἰέναι, ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς πολλὴν
ἀθυμίαν ἔχειν, ὀρώντας καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἱ διὰ πίστεως

ἀ-θυμία ἢ: faintheartedness, lack of courage 2
ἀ-πιστία, ἢ: mistrust, distrust, disbelief, 2
ἀνάγκη, ἢ: necessity, force, 5
ἀξιόω: deem (acc) worthy of (gen), think, 2
εἴτε: either...or; whether...or, 4
ἐπι-ορκία, ἢ: false swearing, perjury, 2
Κλεάνωρ, ὄ: Cleanor, 3
κόσμος, ὄ: order, dress, adornment, 1
λόγος, ὄ: word, speech, account, argument 3

νίκη, ἢ: victory in battle, 3
ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, right, 2
πίστις, -εως ὄ: trust, loyalty; pledge, 2
πρέπειν: to be suitable, fitting, like (dat) 2
στέλλω: set in order, arrange, equip, make, 1
τελευτάω: to end, complete, finish; die, 2
τελευτή, ἢ: death; accomplishment, 1
φιλία, ἢ: friendship, affection, love, 1
ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 7

1 ἐκ τούτου: *after this*; ‘from this’
ἐσταλμένος: pf. mid. στέλλω; Xenophon
is making his first appearance as general
ἐπὶ: *for...*; expressing purpose
2 ὡς...κάλλιστα: *as handsomely as he was
able*; clause of comparison; καλός suggests
beauty and nobleness; superlative adv.
εἴτε...διδόειν: *that, if...*; opt. replaces ἄν +
subj. in ind. disc. secondary seq. (a protasis
in a pres. general condition in direct disc.)
3 τὸν κάλλιστον...πρέπειν: *that...*; ind.
disc.; acc. subject
3 τῷ νικᾶν: *for winning*; articular inf.
α-contract and dat. object of πρέπειν
εἴτε...δέοι: *and that if...*; opt. δεῖ replaces
ἄν + subj. in ind. disc. secondary seq. (in a
present general condition in dir. disc.)

τελευτᾶν: α-contract inf.
4 ὀρθῶς ἔχειν: *it is right that...*; impersonal
ind. disc.; ἔχω (‘is disposed,’ ‘holds’) +
adv. can be translated as εἰμί + adj.
τῶν καλλίστων: i.e. things, substantive
ἀξιῶσαντα: *that (one)...*; modifies
missing acc. subject of τυγχάνειν; this
aor. ppl governs the preceding gen. and
acc.: ‘deem (acc) worthy of (gen)’
5 τυγχάνειν: *attain*: + partitive gen.
ἤρχετο: ἄρχω governs a partitive gen.
7 οἶμαι: οἶομαι, parenthetical
8 αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλίας ἰέναι: *to come to (terms)
of friendship with them*; an idiom with a
dat. of association, inf. ἔρχομαι
ἀνάγκη: (*it is*)...; impersonal, supply ἐστί
9 οἱ: *who...*; relative pronoun

αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς ἐνεχείρισαν, οἷα πεπόνθασιν· εἰ μέντοι δια- 10
 νοοῦμεθα σὺν τοῖς ὄπλοις ὧν τε πεπονήκασι δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι
 αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς ἵεναι, σὺν
 τοῖς θεοῖς πολλὰ ἡμῖν καὶ καλά ἐλπίδες εἰσὶ σωτηρίας.’
 9. τοῦτο δὲ λέγοντος αὐτοῦ πτάρνυται τις· ἀκούσαντες δ’ οἱ 15
 στρατιῶται πάντες μιᾷ ὀρμῇ προσεκύνησαν τὸν θεόν, καὶ ὁ
 Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· ‘δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπεὶ περὶ σωτηρίας
 ἡμῶν λεγόντων οἰωνὸς τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ σωτήρος ἐφάνη, εὖ-
 ξασθαι τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ θύσειν σωτήρια ὅπου ἂν πρῶτον εἰς

δια-νοέομαι: to intend, think over, 1
 δίκη, ἡ: justice, penalty; lawsuit, trial, 1
 ἐγ-χειρίζω: to entrust; put in one’s hand, 1
 ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 2
 ἐπι-τίθημι: set upon, attack; put upon; add, 4
 εὐχομαι: to pray, offer prayers, 7
 Ζεὺς, ὁ: Zeus, 4
 λοιπός, ὁ: remaining, the rest, 7

10 αὐτοῖς: *to them*; i.e. the enemy, dat.
 indirect object
 οἷα πεπόνθασιν: *what sort...*; the missing
 antecedent is obj. of ὀρώντες above;
 στρατηγούς is used proleptically (in
 anticipation) as the obj. of ὀρώντες but is
 best translated as the subject of the clause:
 ‘what sort the generals...’ instead of ‘the
 generals, what sort they...’, 3p. pf. πάσχω
 11 ὧν...δίκην: *justice for (the things)*
which...; genitive of charge or accusation;
 pf. ποιέω; δίκην is object of the aor. inf.
 12 αὐτοῖς: *upon them*; i.e. the enemy, dat. of
 compound verb; aor. inf. of ἐπιτίθημι
 τὸ λοιπόν: *for the future*; or ‘thereafter,’
 adverbial acc. or acc. of duration
 διὰ παντὸς πολέμου...ἵεναι: *to come to*

οἶος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 6
 οἰωνός, ὁ: bird, bird of omen or augury, 1
 ὅπου: where, 5
 ὀρμή, ἡ: impulse, assault, attack, onset, 2
 προσ-κυνέω: to fall and show obeisance to, 2
 πτάρνυμι: to sneeze, 1
 σωτήρ, ὁ: deliverer, preserver, 1
 σωτήριος, -α, -ον: of deliverance, security 1

total war with them; dat. of association;
 note the same construction in III.2.8
 13 ἡμῖν: dat. of possession, ἡμεῖς
 εἰσὶ: 3p pres. εἰμί
 σωτηρίας: objective gen. of ἐλπίδες
 14 τοῦτο...αὐτοῦ: *while...*; gen. abs.
 marking the end of the speech
 15 μιᾷ ὀρμῇ: *with one impulse*; dat. manner
 16 περὶ...λεγόντων: *while...*; gen. abs.
 17 τοῦ Διὸς: gen. Ζεὺς
 ἐφάνη: 3s aor. pass. dep. φαίνω
 εὖξασθαι...θύσειν: *to vow in prayer...to...*;
 i.e. to promise; governed by δοκεῖ μοι
 18 θύσειν σωτήρια: *to make offerings for*
deliverance; neut. pl. inner acc., fut. inf.
 ὅπου ἂν: *wherever...*; general relative
 clause with ἂν + subj.

φιλίαν χώραν ἀφικώμεθα, συνεπέξασθαι δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
 θεοῖς θύσειν κατὰ δύναμιν. καὶ ὅτω δοκεῖ ταύτ’, ἔφη, ἀνα- 20
 τεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα.’ καὶ ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ἐκ τούτου
 ἤϋξαντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ τῶν θεῶν καλῶς εἶχεν,
 ἤρχετο πάλιν ὧδε. 10. ‘ἐτύγχανον λέγων ὅτι πολλὰ καὶ καλαὶ
 ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν εἶεν σωτηρίας. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν
 ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὄρκους, οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐπιωρκή- 25
 κασί τε καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους λελύκασιν. οὕτω
 δ’ ἐχόντων εἰκὸς τοῖς μὲν πολεμίοις ἐναντίους εἶναι τοὺς
 θεούς, ἡμῖν δὲ συμμάχους, οἵπερ ἱκανοὶ εἰσι καὶ τοὺς μεγά-
 λους ταχὺ μικροὺς ποιεῖν καὶ τοὺς μικροὺς κἂν ἐν δεινοῖς

ἀνα-τείνω: to lift up, raise; hold up, 5
 ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, quite all, 1
 ἀφ-ικνεόμαι: to come, arrive, 7
 δεινός, -ή, -όν: skillful, clever; terrible, 3
 δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: force (troops), strength, 5
 εἰκός, ὅτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 5
 ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 2
 ἐμ-πεδόω: confirm, ratify, hold firm, 1
 ἐναντίος -α -ον: opposing, contrary to (dat) 1
 ἐπι-ορκέω: to swear falsely, 2
 εὔχομαι: to pray, offer prayers, 7
 ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable 6

λύω: to loosen, break, free; *mid.* ransom, 5
 μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 4
 ὄρκος, ὄ: an oath, 4
 ὅσπερ, ἡπερ, ὅπερ: very one who, which, 5
 παιανίζω: chant a paean (song of triumph), 1
 παρά: from, at, to the side of, in respect to, 6
 σύμ-μαχος, -ον: ally, co-fighter, 3
 συν-επ-εύχομαι: to pray at the same time, 1
 σωτηρία, ἡ: deliverance, safety, security, 6
 φίλιος, -α, -ον: of a friend, friendly, 1
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ: hand, 5
 ὧδε: in this way, so, thus, 7

19 συνεπέξασθαι: *to vow in prayer...to...;*
 i.e. to promise; governed by δοκεῖ μοι
 20 κατὰ δύναμιν: *according to our power;*
 i.e. insofar as we are able
 ὅτω: *anyone to whom...;* ὥστιν; relative
 pronoun, dat. sg.
 ταῦτ(α): neuter pl. subject of sg. δοκεῖ
 ἔφη: impf. φημί
 ἀνατεινάτω: *let...;* 3s aor. imperative
 22 ἤϋξαντο: aor. mid. εὔχομαι
 τὰ: *matters...;* 3p subject of 3s verb
 καλῶς εἶχεν: ἔχω ('is disposed,' 'holds')
 + adv. is often equivalent to εἶμι + adj.
 23 ἐτύγχανον: *I happened to...;* + pple, as
 often with a complementary pple
 24 εἶεν: 3s opt. εἶμι, ind. disc. in secondary
 sequence

σωτηρίας: objective gen. of ἐλπίδες
 πρῶτον: adverbial acc.
 25 ἐπιωρκήκασι, λελύκασιν: 3p pf. both
 verbs govern the same acc. object
 παρὰ: *contrary to...*
 26 (τουτῶν) οὕτω δ’ ἐχόντων: gen. abs.;
 note the translation of ἔχω from above
 27 εἰκός: (*it is*) *a likelihood that...*
 ἐναντίους: governs a dative
 28 ὅπερ: (*since*) *they...;* 'the very ones who'
 ἱκανοί...ποιεῖν: *capable to...;* explanatory
 (epexegetical) inf. equiv. to acc. of respect
 29 ταχὺ: adverbial acc.
 ποιεῖν: *make (x) (y);* with a double acc.
 τοὺς μικροὺς: acc. object of σώζειν
 κἂν...δεινοῖς ὥσι: *even if they are in dire*
straits; καὶ ἔαν, present general condition

ᾧσι σφάζειν εὐπετώσ, ὅταν βούλωνται. ¹¹ ἔπειτα δὲ ἀναμνήσω ¹
 γὰρ ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς τῶν προγόνων τῶν ἡμετέρων κινδύνους,
 ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὡς ἀγαθοῖς τε ὑμῖν προσήκει εἶναι σφάζονται τε
 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ἐκ πάνυ δεινῶν οἱ ἀγαθοί. ἐλθόντων μὲν
 γὰρ Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτοῖς παμπληθεὶ στόλῳ ὡς ⁵
 ἀφανιούντων τὰς Ἀθήνας, ὑποστήναι αὐτοὶ Ἀθηναῖοι τολμή-
 σαντες ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς. ¹² καὶ εὐξάμενοι τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὀπό-
 σους κατακάνοιεν τῶν πολεμίων τοσαύτας χιμαίρας καταθύσειν
 τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ εἶχον ἱκανὰς εὐρεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς κατ'

ἀ-φανίζω: to destroy, make unseen, blot out ²
 Ἀθήναι, αἱ: Athens, ²
 Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, ⁶
 ἀνα-μνήσκω: to remind, recall; remember ¹
 Ἄρτεμις, -ιδος ἡ: Artemis, ¹
 δεινός, -ή, -όν: skillful, clever; terrible, ³
 ἔπ-εῖτα: then, next, secondly, ⁴
 εὐ-πετής, -ες: easy, ¹
 εὐρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, ³
 εὐχόμεαι: to pray, offer prayers, ⁷
 ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, ⁷
 ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable ⁶
 ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), ⁵
 κατα-θύω: to sacrifice, ¹

κατα-κάνω: to kill, slay, ³
 κίνδυνος, ὁ: risk, danger, venture, ²
 ὀπόσους, -α, -ον: as much/many/great as, ⁶
 ὅταν: ὅτε ἄν, whenever, ³
 παμ-πληθής, -ές: massive, of the multitude, ¹
 πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, ⁴
 πρό-γονος, ὁ: forefather, early-born, ⁴
 προσ-ήκω: have come; belongs to (dat) ⁴
 στόλος, ὁ: expedition, journey, ⁴
 τολμάω: to dare, venture, undertake, ⁵
 τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: so great, so much,
 so many, ⁷
 ὑφ-ίστημι: to support, hold up, withstand, ¹
 χιμαίρα, ἡ: she-goat, ¹

¹ ᾧσι: 3p pres. subj. εἰμί
 ὅταν: + subj. in a general temporal clause
 ἔπειτα δέ: a second point, corresponds to
 πρῶτον μὲν above
 ἀναμνήσω: remind (acc) about (acc.); fut.
² καί: also; adverbial
³ ἵνα εἰδῆτε: so that...; purpose, 2s subj.
 οἶδα
 ὡς ἀγαθοῖς: how noble..., how brave...;
 dat. pred. of inf. εἶναι, agreeing with ἡμῖν
 προσήκει: it is fitting for, it belongs to; +
 dat.; impersonal verb + dat. of interest
 σφάζονται τε: and (how)...; the subject is
 οἱ ἀγαθοί, 'the brave,' below
⁴ δεινῶν...Περσῶν...τῶν σὺν αὐτοῖς:
 gen. abs., aor. pple of ἔρχομαι; Xenophon
 recalls the Battle of Marathon in 490 BC,

ten years before Xerxes brought his
 expedition by land in 480 BC
⁵ παμπληθεὶ στόλῳ: with...; dat. of
 accompaniment or means
 ὡς ἀφανιούντων τὰς Ἀθήνας: in order
 to...; 'so as going...' ὡς + fut. pple
 indicating purpose
⁶ ὑποστήναι: aor. act. inf.
⁷ εὐξάμενοι: (the Greeks) vowing in prayer;
 governs the fut. inf. καταθύσειν
 ὀπόσους...τῶν πολεμίων τοσαύτας: as
 many of enemies...so many....; or 'as
 many...as' correlatives
⁸ κατακάνοιεν: opt. in a general relative
 clause in secondary seq. κατακάνω
⁹ εἶχον: they were not able; ἔχω + inf.
 ἱκανὰς: supply χιμαίρας
 ἔδοξεν: it seemed best

ἐνιαυτὸν πεντακοσίας θύειν, καὶ ἔτι νῦν ἀποθύουσιν. 13. ἔπειτα 10
 ὅτε Ξέρξης ὕστερον ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίθμητον στρατιὰν ἦλθεν
 ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ τότε ἐνίκων οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι τοὺς
 τούτων προγόνους καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. ὦν
 ἔστι μὲν τεκμήρια ὄραν τὰ τρόπαια, μέγιστον δὲ μαρτύριον
 ἢ ἐλευθερία τῶν πόλεων ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε· 15
 οὐδένα γὰρ ἄνθρωπον δεσπότην ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεοὺς προσκυ-
 νεῖτε. 14. τοιούτων μὲν ἔστε προγόνων. οὐ μὲν δὴ τοῦτό γε
 ἐρῶ ὡς ὑμεῖς καταισχύnete αὐτούς· ἀλλ' οὐ πολλὰ ἡμέραι

ἀγείρω: to gather, muster, 1
 ἀν-αρίθμητος, -η, -ον: countless, 1
 ἀπο-θύω: to offer up (in sacrifice), 1
 γῆ, ἡ: earth, 4
 δεσπότης, ὁ: master, lord, 1
 ἐλευθερία, ἡ: freedom, liberty, 1
 Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ: Greece, Hellas, 7
 ἐνιαυτός, ὁ: year, a long period of time, 1
 ἔπ-εῖτα: then, next, secondly, 4
 ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 7
 θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 1
 κατα-ισχύνω: to dishonor, put to shame, 2,
 τό: evidence, proof, 1

μέγιστος, -η, -ον: greatest, mightiest, 3
 Ξέρξης, ὁ: Xerxes, 1
 ὅτε: when, at some time, 7
 πεντακοσιοί, -αι, -α: five hundred, 1
 πρό-γονος, ὁ: forefather, ancestor, 4
 προσ-κυνέω: to fall and show obeisance, 2
 στρατία, ἡ: army, expedition, land force, 4
 τεκμήριον, τό: sign, indication, proof, 1
 τότε: then, at that time, 6
 τρέφω: to rear, foster, nurture, 1
 τρόπαιον, τό: monument, trophy, 1
 ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last, 2

10 κατ(ὰ) ἐνιαυτὸν: *year by year*; annually,
 the distributive use of κατὰ
 πεντακοσίας: supply χιμαίρας, 'goats'
 11 ὕστερον: *later*; Xenophon was talking
 about the Battle of Marathon in 490 BC
 and now notes Xerxes invasion in 480 BC
 ἀγείρας: nom. sg. aor. ppl
 ἦλθεν: 3s aor. ἔρχομαι
 12 ἐπὶ: *against*
 ἐνίκων: ἐ-νικα-ον; impf. α-contract verb
 13 καὶ κατὰ...καὶ κατὰ: *both by...and by...*;
 distributive use of κατὰ
 ὧν: *of these*; 'of which'
 ἔστι: *it is allowed*
 14 ὄραν: inf. α-contract verb
 15 πόλεων: gen. pl. πόλις

15 ἐν αἷς: *in which*; the antecedent πόλεων
 is fem. plural
 ἐγένεσθε: *were born*
 ἐτράφητε: aor. pass. τρέφω
 16 δεσπότην: *as master*
 17 ἔστε: 2p pres. εἰμί
 τοιούτων προγόνων: *from...*; gen. of
 source as predicate of the linking verb
 οὐ μὲν δὴ τοῦτο γε ἐρῶ: *I will not, of
 course, say this (namely) that...*; μὲν δὴ
 with no corresponding δέ expresses
 certainty, often in conclusions; γε
 emphasizes τοῦτο; ἐρέω is the fut.
 of λέγω
 18 ἡμέραι (εἰσί): *(there are)...*; add verb

ἀφ' οὗ ἀντιταξάμενοι τούτοις τοῖς ἐκείνων ἐγγόνοις πολλα-
 πλασίους ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐνικᾶτε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. 15. καὶ τότε μὲν 20
 δὴ περὶ τῆς Κύρου βασιλείας ἄνδρες ἦτε ἀγαθοί· νῦν δ'
 ὁπότε περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας ὁ ἀγὼν ἐστι, πολὺ δῆπου
 ὑμᾶς προσήκει καὶ ἀμείνονας καὶ προθυμοτέρους εἶναι. 16. ἀλλὰ
 μὴν καὶ θαρραλεωτέρους νῦν πρέπει εἶναι πρὸς τοὺς πολε-
 μίους. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἄπειροι ὄντες αὐτῶν τὸ δὲ πλῆθος 25
 ἄμετρον ὁρῶντες, ὁμῶς ἐτολμήσατε σὺν τῷ πατρώῳ φρονή-
 ματι ἰέναι εἰς αὐτούς· νῦν δὲ ὁπότε καὶ πείραν ἤδη ἔχετε
 αὐτῶν ὅτι οὐ θέλουσι καὶ πολλαπλάσιοι ὄντες [μῆ] δέχεσθαι

ἄ-μετρος -ον: without measure, measureless 1
 ἄ-πειρος -ον: inexperienced, ignorant (gen), 1
 ἀγὼν, ὁ: contest, competition, 2
 ἀμείνων, -ον: better, nobler, braver, 4
 ἀντι-τάττω: to set opposite or against, 1
 βασιλεία, ἡ: kingdom, 1
 δέχομαι: to receive, accept, 4
 δῆπου: perhaps, of course, I suppose, 1
 ἔκ-γονος, -ον: offspring, children, 1
 θαρραλέος, -α, -ον: daring, bold, 1
 μὴν: certainly, truly, surely, 3
 ὁμῶς: nevertheless, however, yet, 3

19 ἀφ' οὗ: from which (time); i.e. since
 τούτοις...ἐγγόνοις: (against)...; dat. obj.
 of compound verb
 20 ὑμῶν αὐτῶν: than...; gen. of comparison
 μὲν δὴ: of course; in affirmation, here
 followed by corresponding δὲ
 21 ἦτε: 2p impf. indicative εἰμί
 22 πολὺ: much; or 'far,' adverbial acc. (acc.
 of degree of extent) modifying both
 comparative adjectives
 23 προσήκει: it is fitting; impersonal
 προθυμοτέρους: comparative, predicate of
 εἶναι
 ἀλλὰ μὴν: well, certainly; ἀλλὰ is not an
 adversative but introduces a further point
 24 καί: even...; adverbial
 πρέπει: it is suitable; impersonal
 εἶναι: supply missing acc. subject ὑμᾶς
 πρὸς: against, in regard to...
 25 αὐτῶν: i.e. the enemy, objective gen. with

πατρῶος, -η, -ον: of one's father, inherited, 2
 πλῆθος, ἡ: crowd, multitude; size, 3
 πολλαπλάσιος, -η, -ον: many times more, 2
 πρέπει: be (conspicuously) suitable, like, 2
 προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 2
 προσ-ήκω: have come; belongs to (dat) 4
 σωτηρία, ἡ: deliverance, safety, security, 6
 τολμάω: to dare, venture, undertake, 5
 τότε: then, at that time, 6
 ὑμέτερος, -α, -ον: your (pl.), 1
 φρόνημα, -ατος, τό: purpose, will; mind, 2

ἄπειροι,
 26 φρονήματι: confidence; 'purpose'
 27 ἰέναι: inf. ἔρχομαι
 εἰς: against...
 26 πείραν...ἔχετε: you know how to make
 trial of (gen); or 'you know how to test,'
 ἔχω may mean 'be able' or 'know' when
 governing an inf., here an α-contract inf.
 27 αὐτῶν: objective gen. obj. of πείραν
 ὅτι: (namely) that...; ind. disc. in
 apposition to πείραν
 (ἐ)θέλουσι: the enemy is the subject
 καὶ...ὄντες: although being...; καί, 'even,'
 suggests that he pple is concessive in sense
 [μῆ]: omit; though part of the manuscript
 tradition, the editor thinks these words
 should be omitted as out of place
 δέχεσθαι: i.e. to meet in battle

ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι ὑμῖν προσήκει τούτους φοβείσθαι; 17. μηδὲ μέντοι 1
 τοῦτο μείον δόξητε ἔχειν ὅτι οἱ †Κύρειοι† πρόσθεν σὺν ἡμῖν
 ταττόμενοι νῦν ἀφεστήκασιν. ἔτι γὰρ οὗτοι κακίονές εἰσι
 τῶν ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἠττημένων· ἔφυγον γοῦν πρὸς ἐκείνους κατα-
 λιπόντες ἡμᾶς. τοὺς δ' ἐθέλοντας φυγῆς ἄρχειν πολὺ 5
 κρείττον σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ταττομένους ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρα
 τάξει ὄραν. 18. εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἀθυμεῖ ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν
 ἵππεῖς, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πολλοὶ πάρεισιν, ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι
 οἱ μύριοι ἵππεῖς οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοι εἰσιν ἄνθρωποι· ὑπὸ

ἀ-θυμέω: be disheartened, lose heart, 3
 ἀφ-ίστημι: to revolt, set off (in revolt), 2
 γοῦν: γε οὖν, at least, at any rate, any way, 1
 ἐν-θυμέομαι: take to heart, consider, ponder, 4
 ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 7
 ἠττάομαι: to be less, be weaker or inferior, 4
 κατα-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 5
 κρείττων, -ον: better, stronger, superior, 5

- 1 τί: *why?*
 προσήκει: *is it fitting...?*; 'does it belong to...?' impersonal
 μηδὲ ...δόξητε: *Don't think*; prohibitive subjunctive (μή + aor. subj.) is a common way to form a negative command
 2 τοῦτο μείον ἔχειν: *that it is worse off (for us) with respect to this*; ἔχω ('holds') + adv. is equivalent to εἰμί + adj.; μείον is a comparative adv.; τοῦτο, an acc. respect
 ὅτι: (*namely*) *because...*; in apposition to τοῦτο
 οἱ Κύριοι: *soldiers under Cyrus*; i.e. non-Greek troops originally under Cyrus
 3 ἀφεστήκασιν: pf. ἀφίστημι
 κακίονές: comparative, predicate adj.
 εἰσι: 3rd pl. εἰμί.
 4 τῶν...ἠττημένων: being defeated; gen. of comparison,
 ὑφ' ἡμῶν: by...; ὑπὸ, gen. of agent

Κύρειος, -α, -ον: of Cyrus, 1
 μείων, μείον: smaller, less, of lesser value, 4
 μηδέ: and not, but not, nor, 3
 μύριος, -η, -ον: numberless, countless, 4
 πάρ-ειμι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 7
 προσ-ήκω: have come; belongs to (dat) 4
 τάττω: draw up, post, form for battle, 6
 φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 7
 φυγή, ἡ: flight, escape, exile, 1

- ἔφυγον: aor. φεύγω
 πρὸς ἐκείνους: *against them*; i.e. against the enemy; with ἔφυγον
 5 τοὺς ἐθέλοντας...ἄρχειν: *those willing...*; i.e. the Κύριοι above; acc. object of ὄραν
 φυγῆς: gen. object of ἄρχειν
 πολὺ κρείττον (ἔστι): *it is far better*; impersonal, inf. ὄραν is subject; πολὺ is acc. of degree of extent; add a verb
 6 ταττομένους: *marshalled, drawn up*
 7 ὅτι: *because*
 ἡμῖν...εἰσίν: dat. of possession; 3p εἰμί
 8 τοῖς πολεμίοις: for...; dat. interest
 ἐνθυμήθητε: *you should take to heart that*; 'let you...' jussive subj.; 2p aor. deponent
 9 οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ: i.e. equivalent to; predicate of 3p εἰμί
 ὑπὸ: *because of...*; gen. of cause

μὲν γὰρ ἵππου ἐν μάχῃ οὐδεὶς πώποτε οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε 10
 λακτισθεὶς ἀπέθανεν, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ τι ἂν
 ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίνηται. 19. οὐκοῦν τῶν ἵππέων πολὺ ἡμεῖς
 ἐπ' ἀσφαλεστέρου ὀχήματός ἐσμεν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππων
 κρέμανται φοβούμενοι οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ κατα-
 πεσεῖν· ἡμεῖς δ' ἐπὶ γῆς βεβηκότες πολὺ μὲν ἰσχυρότερον 15
 παίσομεν, ἣν τις προσίη, πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὅτου ἂν βουλώ-
 μεθα τευξόμεθα. ἐνὶ δὲ μόνῳ προέχουσιν οἱ ἵππεῖς [ἡμᾶς].
 φεύγειν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλέστερόν ἐστιν ἢ ἡμῖν. 20. εἰ δὲ δὴ τὰς

ἀσφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
 βαίνω: to walk, step, go, 1
 γῆ, ἡ: earth, 4
 δάκνω: to bite, 2
 ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 1
 κατα-πίπτω: to fall down, fall off, 1
 κρεμάννυμι: to hang, suspend, 1
 λακτίζω: to kick, kick with the heel, 1
 μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat, 4

10 ἵππου: with preceding ὑπό
 δηχθεὶς, λακτισθεὶς: nom. sg. aor. pass.
 pple δακνώ, λακτίζω
 11 ἀπέθανεν: aor. ἀποθνήσκω
 εἰσὶν: 3p pres. εἰμί
 οἱ ποιοῦντες: (those)...; nom. predicate
 ὅ τι: what...; '(that) which...' ἂν + subj.
 in a general relative clause
 12 τῶν ἵππέων: gen. of comparison
 πολὺ: far; 'much,' acc. of degree of
 difference (or adverbial acc.)
 13 ἐπ'...ἐσμεν: we are on
 ἀσφαλεστέρου: comparative
 13 οἱ... ἐφ' ἵππων: for those on...; prep.
 phrase in attributive position
 14 κρέμανται: 3p pres. mid. κρεμάννυμι
 οὐχ...μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ: not only...but also
 τὸ καταπεσεῖν: articular aor. inf. of
 καταπίπτω; translate as gerund (-ing)
 15 ἐπὶ γῆς: on the ground
 βεβηκότες: pf. pple βαίνω
 πολὺ: far; 'much,' acc. of extent of degree
 (or adverbial acc.)

μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 5
 οὐκ-οὖν: therefore, then, accordingly, 1
 ὄχημα, -ατος, το: foundation; footing, 1
 παίω: to strike, smite, 3
 προ-έχω: to hold before, surpass; project, 1
 προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 6
 πώ-ποτε: ever yet, 1
 φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 7

16 παίσομεν, ἣν τις προσίη: ἣν is ἐάν; future
 more vivid (ἐάν + subj., fut. ind.); 3s pres.
 subj. προσέρχομαι
 ὅτου: whatever...; '(that) which';
 οὔτινος; the acc. sg. relative pronoun is
 attracted into the gen. of the missing
 antecedent; ἂν + subj. in a general relative
 clause
 17 τευξόμεθα: fut. middle τυγχάνω, 'hit' or
 'attain,' the gen. obj. (partitive gen.) is the
 missing antecedent of ὅτου
 ἐνὶ...μόνῳ: in one single respect; dat. of
 respect; dative sg. of εἷς
 προέχουσιν: are superior
 [ἡμᾶς]: the editor believes that ἡμᾶς,
 although it is part of the manuscript
 tradition, should be omitted (προέχω
 usually governs a gen.)
 18 φεύγειν: subject inf.
 ἢ: than...
 αὐτοῖς, ἡμῖν: for...; datives of interest,
 subject and object of comparison

μὲν μάχας θαρρεῖτε, ὅτι δὲ οὐκέτι ὑμῖν Τισσαφέρηνς ἡγή-
 σεται οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς ἀγορὰν παρέξει, τοῦτο ἄχθεσθε, σκέ- 20
 ψασθε πότερον κρεῖττον Τισσαφέρην ἡγεμόνα ἔχειν, ὃς
 ἐπιβουλεύων ἡμῖν φανερός ἐστιν, ἢ οὗς ἂν ἡμεῖς ἄνδρας
 λαβόντες ἡγεῖσθαι κελεύωμεν, οἳ εἴσονται ὅτι, ἦν τι περὶ
 ἡμᾶς ἀμαρτάνωσι, περὶ τὰς ἑαυτῶν ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἀμαρ-
 τήσονται. 21 τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πότερον ὠνεῖσθαι κρεῖττον ἐκ 25
 τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἥς οὗτοι παρέιχον μικρὰ μέτρα πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου,

ἀγορά, ἡ: marketplace, an assembly, 3
 ἀμαρτάνω: miss the mark, fail, lose, 3
 ἀργύριον, τό: silver (coin); piece of silver, 3
 ἄχθομαι: to be vexed, grieved, burdened, 1
 ἐπι-βουλεύω: plot or contrive against (dat) 2
 ἡγεμών, ὁ: guide, leader, commander, 4
 θαρρέω: to be confident in, take courage; be
 bold, 2
 κρεῖττων, -ον: better, stronger, superior, 5
 μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat, 4
 μέτρον, τό: measure, proportion, 2

μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 4
 οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 3
 παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 7
 πότερος -α -ον: which of the two? whether?
 3
 σκέπτομαι: to consider, examine, 2
 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 2
 φανερός, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 3
 ψυχή, ἡ: breath, life, spirit, soul, 3
 ὠνέομαι to buy, purchase, 3

19 τὰς...μάχας: *in...*; acc. direct object;
 θαρρέω may be transitive or intransitive
 ὅτι δὲ...τοῦτο: *and...at this (namely)*
because...;
 ἡμῖν: *for...*; dat. of interest
 ἡγήσεται: fut. 'be a guide'
 20 τοῦτο ἄχθεσθε: *at this...*; acc. of respect
 explained by the ὅτι clause above; ἄχθεσθε
 is parallel to θαρρεῖτε under the same
 conditional εἰ
 σκέψασθε: aor. imperative
 21 πότερον...ἢ: *whether...or...*; ind.
 question; here, deliberative subjunctive
 κρεῖττον: (*it is*) better
 ἡγεμόνα: *as a guide*
 22 φανερός ἐστιν: *is clearly...*; 'is clear'
 ἢ: *or*
 οὗς ἂν...ἄνδρας...κελεύωμεν.: (*to have as*

guides) whatever...; ellipsis, general
 relative clause (ἂν + subjunctive)
 23 οἳ: *who...*
 εἴσονται: fut. dep. οἶδα
 ὅτι: *that*
 ἦν...ἀμαρτάνωσι...ἀμαρτήσονται: *if...*;
 future more vivid (ἐάν + subj., fut. ind.)
 τι: *at all*; 'some,' inner acc.
 περὶ: *concerning...*
 24 τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια: *and in respect to...*; or
 'as for...' acc. of respect
 25 πότερον...ἢ: *Is it...or...?*; a direct question
 as opposed to the ind. question following
 σκέψασθε: πότερον goes untranslated
 κρεῖττον: (*Is it*) better
 26 ἥς: (*from*) which...; add ἐκ
 μικρὰ μέτρα: *small portions*
 πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου: *for...*; gen. of price

μηδὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας, ἢ αὐτοὺς λαμβάνειν ἤνπερ κρατῶ- 1
 μεν, μέτρῳ χρωμένους ὅπως ἂν ἕκαστος βούληται. 22. εἰ δὲ
 ταῦτα μὲν γινώσκετε ὅτι κρείττονα, τοὺς δὲ ποταμοὺς ἄπορον
 νομίζετε εἶναι καὶ μεγάλως ἠγγείσθε ἕξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες,
 σκέψασθε εἰ ἄρα τοῦτο καὶ μωρότατον πεποιήκασι οἱ βάρ- 5
 βαροι. πάντες γὰρ ποταμοί, ἦν καὶ πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν ἄποροι
 ὦσι, προσιούσι πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς διαβατοὶ γίνονται οὐδὲ τὸ
 γόνυ βρέχοντες. 23. εἰ δὲ μήθ' οἱ ποταμοὶ διήσουσι ἠγεμῶν
 τε μηδεὶς ἡμῖν φανέται, οὐδ' ὡς ἡμῖν γε ἀθυμητέον. ἐπι-

ἀ-θυμητέος, -ον: must lose heart, 1
 ἄ-πορος, -ον: impassable; impossible, 3
 ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 1
 βρέχω: be wet, get wet, 1
 γόνυ, γόνατος, τό: knee, 1
 δι-ίημι: to let go through, send through, 1
 δια-βατός, -η, -ον: to be crossed, fordable, 1
 ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 6
 ἕξ-απατάω: to deceive thoroughly, 5
 ἠγεμῶν, ὄ: guide, leader, commander, 4
 κρατέω: to be strong; conquer, prevail, 6
 κρείττων, -ον: better, stronger, superior, 5

μέτρον, τό: measure, proportion, 2
 μή-τε: and not, 3
 μηδ-είς, μηδ-εμία, μηδ-έν: no one, nothing, 1
 μηδέ: and not, but not, nor, 3
 μωρός, -ή, -όν: foolish, stupid; dull, 1
 ὅπως, -α, -ον: as much/many/great as, 6
 ὅσπερ, ἤπερ, ὅπερ: very one who, which, 5
 πηγῆ, ἡ: spring (of a river), 2
 προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 6
 πρόσω: forwards, onwards, 1
 σκέπτομαι: to consider, examine, 2

- 1 μηδε...ἔχοντας: *and not even...*; μή + pple is conditional and concessive in sense; the pple modifies ἡμᾶς, the missing acc. subject of ὠνεῖσθαι
 τοῦτο: i.e. ἀργύριον
 ἢ: *or*
 (ἡμᾶς) αὐτοὺς λαμβάνειν: *that we ourselves...*; i.e. steal what we need
 ἤνπερ κρατῶμεν: *if...*; ἔάνπερ + subj.
 2 μέτρῳ χρωμένους: *enjoying the portion*; χράομαι governs an dat., modifies (ἡμᾶς) ὅπως (χρήσθαι)...βούληται: *as much as...*; dat. obj. of missing inf. χρήσθαι; a general relative clause (ἂν + subj).
 εἰ...γινώσκετε...νομίζετε...ἠγγείσθε: all three verbs are part of the protasis
 3 ταῦτα...ὅτι κρείττονα (ἔστι): *that these things...*; proleptic use of ταῦτα: translate in the ὅτι clause and add a linking verb
 ἄπορον: *a difficulty*; 'a perplexing thing,' predicate of εἶναι, inf. of εἰμί
 4 ἠγγείσθε: *you think*

- (ὑμᾶς) ἕξαπατηθῆναι: *that...*; ind. disc., aor. pass. inf.; add a acc. subject
 διαβάντες: aor. pple. διαβαίνω
 5 σκέψασθε: aor. imperative
 ἄρα: *as it turns out*; a truth just realized
 καὶ: *actually*; 'in fact,' adverbial
 μωρότατον: superlative adj.; predicative
 πεποιήκασι: pf. ποιέω
 6 ἦν καὶ...ὥσι: *even if...*; ἔάν + 3p subj
 εἰμί; protasis is concessive in sense in a present general condition
 ἄποροι: *impassable*
 7 προσιούσι: (*for us*)...; dat. pl. pres. pple προσέρχομαι.
 οὐδὲ...: *and not even...*
 8 μήθ'...τε: *both...not...and...*; μήτε
 διήσουσι: fut. διήμι; add ἡμᾶς as object
 9 φανέται: fut. mid. φαίνω, 'appear'
 οὐδὲ ὥς: *not even so*
 ἀθυμητέον (ἔστι): *we must not...*; impers. verbal adj. + εἰμί expresses necessity, here with ἡμῖν, dat. of agent: translate as active

στάμεθα γὰρ Μυσοῦς, οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἡμῶν φαίημεν βελτίους 10
 εἶναι, ὅτι βασιλέως ἄκοντος ἐν βασιλέως χώρα πολλάς τε
 καὶ εὐδαίμονας καὶ μεγάλας πόλεις οἰκοῦσιν, ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ
 Πισίδας ὡσαύτως, Λυκάονας δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἶδομεν ὅτι ἐν
 τοῖς πεδίοις τὰ ἐρυμνὰ καταλαβόντες τὴν τούτων χώραν
 καρποῦνται· 24. καὶ ἡμᾶς δ' ἂν ἔφην ἔγωγε χρῆναι μῆπω φανε- 15
 ροὺς εἶναι οἴκαδε ὠρμημένους, ἀλλὰ κατασκευάζεσθαι ὡς αὐ-
 τοῦ οἰκήσοντας. οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι καὶ Μυσοῖς βασιλεὺς πολλοὺς
 μὲν ἡγεμόνας ἂν δοίη, πολλοὺς δ' ἂν ὀμήρους τοῦ ἀδόλως

ἄ-δόλος, -ον: without trickery, honest, 1
 ἄκων (ἄ-έκων), ἄκουσα, ἄκον: unwilling, 3
 βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 5
 ἔγωγε: I, for my part, 4
 ἐρυμνά, τά: stronghold, fortified position, 1
 εὐ-δαίμων, -ον: happy, fortunate, blessed, 3
 ἡγεμῶν, ὄ: guide, leader, commander, 4
 καρπῶ: to reap; enjoy the fruits of, 1
 κατα-σκευάζω: to prepare, build, equip, 3
 Λυκάονος, -η, -ον: Lycæonian, 1

μῆ-πω: not yet, 1
 Μυσός, -η, -ον: a Mysian, 2
 οἴκα-δε: homeward, home, 4
 οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 5
 ὄμηρος, ὄ: a hostage; pledge, guarantee, 1
 ὀρμάω: to set in motion, set out, begin, 4
 Πισίδαι, οἰ: Pisidians, 2
 φανερός, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 3
 χρῆ: it is necessary, it is fitting; must, ought 2
 ὡς-αὐτως: in the same manner, just so, 1

10 στάμεθα: ἐπι-στάμεθα
 Μυσοῦς...ὅτι: *that the Mysians...*; 'the
 Mysians...that' proleptic use of
 ἂν φαίημεν: *we would...*; pres. potential
 opt. φημί
 ἡμῶν: *than...*; gen. of comparison
 βελτίους: βελτίο(ν)ες; acc. predicate
 11 βασιλέως ἄκοντος: gen. abs.
 βασιλέως: gen. sg.
 13 καὶ αὐτοὶ: *even (we) ourselves*; intensive
 pronoun; καὶ is adverbial
 εἶδομεν: 3p aor. ὀράω (εἶδον)
 14 τούτων: i.e. Persians
 15 ἂν ἔφην: *I would say*; ἂν + impf.
 indicative φημί is contrary to fact
 χρῆναι μῆπω...φανερούς: *that...ought not
 yet to be obviously...*; 'it is necessary that
 we...' χρῆναι is a pres. inf.; ἡμᾶς is acc.

subject of εἶναι; predicate φανερούς should
 be translated as an adverb
 16 ὠρμημένους: pf. mid. pple
 κατασκευάζεσθαι: also governed by
 χρῆναι; ἡμᾶς is acc. subject
 ὡς αὐτοῦ οἰκήσοντας: *as if going to...*;
 'on the grounds that...' ὡς + fut. pple
 suggests purpose; in this case, it suggests a
 pretense that is not true
 αὐτοῦ: *here*; 'in this very place,' adv.
 18 ἂν δοίη: *would...*; potential opt. 3s aor.
 δίδωμι.
 δ' ἂν ὀμήρους (δοίη): add verb from above
 τοῦ...ἐκπέμψιν: *for sending (them) out
 without trickery*; i.e. 'in order to send them
 out...' articular fut. inf. expressing
 purpose; hostages are exchanged to make
 sure that both sides abide by an agreement

ἐκπέμψειν, καὶ ὁδοποιήσειέ γ' ἂν αὐτοῖς καὶ εἰ σὺν τεθρίπ-
 ποῖς βούλονται ἀπιέναι. καὶ ἡμῶν γ' ἂν οἶδ' ὅτι τρισάσμενος 20
 ταυτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρα ἡμᾶς μένειν κατασκευαζομένους. 25. ἀλλὰ
 γὰρ δέδοικα μὴ, ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ἄργοι ζῆν καὶ ἐν ἀφθόνοις
 βιοτεύειν, καὶ Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλαις
 γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένοις ὀμιλεῖν, μὴ ὥσπερ οἱ λωτοφάγοι ἐπι-
 λαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ. 26. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον 25
 εἶναι πρῶτον εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους πειρᾶσθαι
 ἀφικνεῖσθαι καὶ ἐπιδείξαι τοῖς Ἕλλησι ὅτι ἐκόντες πένονται,

ἀ-ργός, -όν: idle, not working, 1
 ἄ-φθονος, ον: without envy; abundant, 2
 ἅπαξ: once, once only, once for all, 1
 ἀφ-ικνεόμαι: to come, arrive, 7
 βιοτεύω: to live, 1
 γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 4
 δέιδω: to fear, 4
 δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right, lawful, fair, 2
 εἰκός, ὅτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 5
 ἐκ-πέμπω: to send out, 1
 ἐκόντων, ἐκούσα, ἐκόν: willing, willingly, 1
 Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ: Greece, Hellas, 7
 ἐπι-δείκνυμι: to indicate, point out, prove, 1
 ἐπι-λανθάνομαι: to forget + gen. 1

ζάω: to live, 5
 κατα-σκευάζω: to prepare, build, equip, 3
 λωτο-φάτος, ὁ: Lotus-eater, 1
 μαθάνω: to learn, understand, 1
 Μήδος, ὁ: Mede, Median, 5
 ὁδο-ποιέω: to build a road, 1
 οἴκα-δε: homeward, home, 4
 οἰκείος, ὁ: relative, kin, 3
 ὀμιλέω: consort/be in company with +dat., 1
 παρθένος, ἡ: maiden, virgin, unmarried girl 1
 πένομαι: to be poor, 1
 τέθριππος, ὁ: four-horse chariot, 1
 τρισ-άσμενος, -η, -ον: thrice-pleased, 1

19 ὁδοποιήσειέ...ἂν,...βούλονται: *would... should...*; fut. less vivid (εἰ opt., ἂν + opt.); 3s aor. opt.

αὐτοῖς: *for...*; i.e. Mysians, dat. interest
 καὶ εἰ: *even if*

τεθρίπποις: means; i.e. on a broad road
 20 ἀπιέναι: inf. ἀπ-έρχομαι
 καὶ...γε: *and for us...*; καὶ...γε emphasizes the intervening dat. of interest

ἂν: governed by ἐποίει, not οἶδ(α)
 οἶδ(α): 1s

21 ἂν...ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρα: *would..., were to...*; contrary to fact condition (εἰ + impf., ἂν + impf.); ἑώρα-ε, 3s impf. α-contract ὁράω
 κατασκευαζομένους: i.e. to stay there

22 ἀλλὰ...γάρ: *but in fact*
 δέδοικα: δέιδω, pf. denotes a state instead of an activity: 'I am afraid'
 μὴ...μὴ...ἐπιλαθώμεθα: *lest...we forget*;

μη+ subj. in a clause of fearing, the μη is repeated after the extended conditional
 ἂν...μάθωμεν: *if...*; ἐὰν + aor. subj., equiv. to a protasis is a fut. more vivid condition; aor. subj. μαθάνω

ζῆν: inf. ζάω
 ἄργοι: translate as adv. with ζῆν
 ἐν ἀφθόνοις: *in abundance*

23 μεγάλαις: i.e. tall

24 μὴ...ἐπιλαθώμεθα: *lest...*; repeating the μη from line 22 for emphasis
 ὥσπερ...: *just as...*; cf. Odyssey Book 9, some of Odysseus' companions ate the lotus in the land of the Lotus-eaters and lost all memory and desire of returning home

25 εἰκός...εἶναι: *that it is...*; impersonal

27 ἐπιδείξαι: aor. inf.
 ἐκόντες: i.e. of their own choice; relative to the poverty of others

ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς τοὺς νῦν [οἴκοι] σκληρῶς ἐκεῖ πολιτεύοντας ἐν- 1
 θάδε κομισαμένους πλουσίους ὄραν. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες,
 πάντα ταῦτα τάγαθὰ δῆλον ὅτι τῶν κρατούντων ἐστί· 27. τοῦτο
 δὴ δεῖ λέγειν, ὅπως ἂν πορευοίμεθ' αὖτε ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα καὶ
 εἰ μάχεσθαι δέοι ὡς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα. πρῶτον μὲν τοί- 5
 νυν, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα
 μὴ τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν στρατηγῆ, ἀλλὰ πορευόμεθα ὅπη ἂν τῇ
 στρατιᾷ συμφέρη· ἔπειτα καὶ τὰς σκηνὰς συγκατακαῦσαι.
 αὗται γὰρ αὖ ὄχλον μὲν παρέχουσιν ἄγειν, συνωφελοῦσι δ'

ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
 ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 7
 ἄμαξη, ἡ: a wagon, cart, 2
 αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 5
 δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 5
 ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 2
 ἐνθάδε: here, hither, there, thither, 1
 ἔξ-εσσι: it is allowed, it is possible, 6
 ἔπ-εῖτα: then, next, secondly, 4
 ζεύγος, -εος, τό: pair of harnessed oxen, 1
 ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 5
 κατα-καίω: to burn up, 2
 κομίζω: to bring, 1
 κρατέω: to be strong; conquer, prevail, 6
 κράτιστος, -η, -ον: strongest, mightiest, 5

μάχομαι: to fight, contend, quarrel, dispute 7
 οἴκοι: at home, in the house, 1
 ὅπη: where; in what way, how, 1
 ὄχλος, ὄ: a crowd, throng, mob; trouble, 4
 παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 7
 πλούσιος, -α, -ον: wealthy, rich, 1
 πολιτεύω: to live (as a citizen), 1
 σκηνή, ἡ: tent, 3
 σκληρός, -ά, -όν: hard, harsh, severe, 1
 στρατηγέω: to be general, be leader, 1
 στρατία, ἡ: army, expedition, land force, 4
 συγ-κατα-καίω: to burn along with, 1
 συμ-φέρω: be advantageous/useful; gather 2
 συν-ωφελέω: to join in helping, 1
 τοί-νυν: well then; therefore, accordingly, 4

- 1 ἐξὸν...ὄραν: (since) it is possible for them (the Greeks), bringing (them) here (i.e. to Asia) to see those living harshly now there (i.e. in Greece) (are) well off; acc. abs. with pple ἔξεσσι + inf. ὄραν, which governs a double acc. (obj. τοὺς πολιτεύοντας and pred. πλουσίους)
- 2 ἐνθάδε κομισαμένους: add object 'them,' aor. mid. with αὐτοῖς but logically agrees with missing acc. subject of ὄραν
- ἀλλὰ γάρ: and yet
- 3 πάντα...τάγαθ'α: πάντα...τὰ ἀγαθ'α; neuter plural subject of 3s verb
 δῆλον ὅτι: clearly; 'it is clear that'
 τῶν κρατούντων ἐστί: belong to those...; 'are of those...' poss. gen. as predicate
 τοῦτο δὴ: precisely this; 'this very thing'
- 4 ὅπως...: how...; an indirect question in

- apposition to τοῦτο
 ἂν πορευοίμεθ'α...μαχοίμεθα, εἰ...δέοι: we would..., if it should be...; fut. less vivid condition (εἰ opt., ἂν + opt.)
 ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα...ὡς κράτιστα: ὡς + superlative advs.: often 'as...as possible'
- 6 ἔφη: 3s impf. φημί
 δοκεῖ: it seems best
 κατακαῦσαι: aor. inf.
 ἵνα μὴ...στρατηγῆ...πορευόμεθα: so that ...may not be our generals; i.e. be hindered by cattle; purpose, 3s pres. subj. and 3p subject; τὰ ζεύγη are pack-animals
 - 7 ὅπη: in whatever way...; general relative clause; ἂν + 3p pres. subj.
 - 8 συγκατακαῦσαι: parallel to κατακαῦσαι
 - 9 ὄχλον...ἄγειν: these (tents) make trouble to bring along; epexegetical inf.

οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι οὔτ' εἰς τὸ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν. 10
 28. ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν τὰ περιττὰ ἀπαλλάξωμεν πλὴν
 ὅσα πολέμου ἔνεκεν ἢ σίτων ἢ ποτῶν ἔχομεν, ἵνα ὡς πλείστοι
 μὲν ἡμῶν ἐν τοῖς ὄπλοις ᾧσιν, ὡς ἐλάχιστοι δὲ σκευοφορῶσι.
 κρατουμένων μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι πάντα ἀλλότρια· ἦν δὲ
 κρατῶμεν, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους δεῖ σκευοφόρους ἡμετέρους 15
 νομίζειν. 29. λοιπὸν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι.
 ὁρᾶτε γὰρ καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ὅτι οὐ πρόσθεν ἐξευεγκεῖν
 ἐτόλμησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς πόλεμον πρὶν τοὺς στρατηγούς ἡμῶν

ἀλλότριος, -η, -ο: another's, of another, 2
 ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, get off; set free, 1
 ἐκ-φέρω: to endure, bear; carry out, bring, 1
 ἐλάχιστος, -η, -ον: smallest, least, fewest, 1
 ἔνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen.), 5
 ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 7
 ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 5
 κρατέω: to be strong; conquer, prevail, 6
 λοιπός, ὅ: remaining, the rest, 7
 μάχομαι: to fight, contend, quarrel, dispute 7
 μέγιστος, -η, -ον: greatest, mightiest, 3
 ὅσπερ, ἤπερ, ὅπερ: very one who, which, 5

περιττός, -η, -ον: excessive, superfluous, 2
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, very many, 4
 πλὴν: except, but (+ gen.), 3
 ποτός, ὅ: drink, 1
 πρὶν: until, before, 3
 σίτος, ὅ: grain, bread, food, 3
 σκεῦος, -εος, τό: equipment, baggage, 2
 σκευο-φορέω: to carry baggage, 2
 σκευο-φόρος, ὅ: baggage-carrier, 1
 τολμάω: to dare, venture, undertake, 5

10 οὐδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc.: 'are no help at all'
 οὔτε...οὔτε: *either...or...*; translate positively after οὐδὲν
 εἰς...: *for...*; + articular inf. expressing purpose
 τὸ...ἔχειν: *acquiring*; articular inf.
 11 ἔτι δὲ: *furthermore*; or 'in addition'
 τὰ περιττὰ: *the excess*; i.e. superfluous
 ἀπαλλάξωμεν: *let us...*; hortatory aor. subjunctive
 12 ἔνεκεν: equiv. to ἔνεκα + preceding gen.
 ἢ...ἢ...: *either...of*
 σίτων...ποτῶν: partitive gen. with ὅσα
 ἵνα...ᾧσιν...σκευοφορῶσι: purpose clause; 3p pres. subj. εἰμί, σκευοφορέω
 ὡς πλείστοι...ὡς ἐλάχιστοι: ὡς + superlative often means "as...as possible"

14 κρατουμένων...πάντα: *all (possessions) of the conquered*; pass. ppl. is gen. poss.
 ἀλλότρια: (*are*) *another's*; i.e. are forfeit to the conquerors; add a linking verb
 ἦν...κρατῶμεν: *if...*; ἐὰν + pres. subj. in a equiv. to a future more vivid
 15 νομίζειν: *to consider* (x) (y); inf. governs a double acc. (obj. and predicate)
 16 λοιπὸν (ἔστι): *it remains*; 'it is left'
 16 εἰπεῖν: aor. inf. λέγω
 ὅπερ: *the very thing which*
 καὶ: *in fact*; adverbial
 17 ὁρᾶτε: 2nd pl. present, not an imperative
 τοὺς πολεμίους ὅτι: *that the enemy...*; 'the enemy that they...' proleptic acc.
 ἐξευεγκεῖν: *to endure*; aor. inf. ἐκφέρω
 18 πρὸς: *against...*

συνέλαβον, νομίζοντες ὄντων μὲν τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ ἡμῶν
 πειθομένων ἱκανοὺς εἶναι ἡμᾶς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ, 20
 λαβόντες δὲ τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἀναρχία ἂν καὶ ἀταξία ἐνόμιζον
 ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσθαι. 30. δεῖ οὖν πολὺ μὲν τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἐπι-
 μελεστέρους γενέσθαι τοὺς νῦν τῶν πρόσθεν, πολὺ δὲ τοὺς
 ἀρχομένους εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειθομένους μᾶλλον τοῖς ἄρ-
 χουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν· 31 ἦν δέ τις ἀπειθῆ, [ἦν] ψηφίσασθαι 25
 τὸν αἰὲ ἡμῶν ἐντυγχάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι κολάζειν· οὕτως
 οἱ πολέμοι πλείστον ἐψευσμένοι ἔσονται· τῆδε γὰρ τῆ

ἀ-πειθέω: to be disobedient, 1
 ἀ-ταξία, ἡ: want of discipline, disorder, 2
 αἰεί: always, forever, in every case, 3
 ἀν-αρχία, ἡ: want or lack of leadership, 1
 ἀπ-όλλυμι: destroy, lose; *mid.* perish, 7
 ἐν-τυγχάνω: to chance upon, encounter, 1
 ἐπι-μελής, -ές: careful, anxious, attentive, 1
 εὐ-τακτος, -ον: well-ordered, orderly, 1
 ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable 6

κολάζω: to punish, chastise, 1
 ὅδε, ἦδε, τόδε: this, this here, 4
 πείθω: to persuade, trust; *mid.* obey, 4
 περι-γίνομαι: be superior to, prevail over;
 survive, 1
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, very much/many, 4
 συλ-λαμβάνω: to seize, gather; help, 4
 ψεύδομαι: to lie, cheat, beguile 1
 ψηφίζομαι: to vote, pass a vote, 2

19 συνέλαβον: aor. συλλαμβάνω
 ὄντων...ἀρχόντων: (*while*) *there were...*;
 gen. abs.
 ἡμῶν πειθομένων: *while...*; gen. abs.
 supply 'leaders' as object
 20 εἶναι ἡμᾶς: *that we...*; acc. subject
 περιγενέσθαι: explanatory (epexegetical)
 inf. following ἱκανοῦς
 21 λαβόντες δέ: *but (when) possessing...*;
 parallel with νομίζοντες...μὲν
 above; the aor. pple is causal in sense
 ἀναρχία...ἀταξία: *by...*; dat. of means
 22 ἀπολέσθαι: aor. mid. ἀπόλλυμι, ἡμᾶς is
 the acc. subject
 πολὺ: *far*; 'much,' adverbial acc. (acc. of
 degree of extent) with the comparative
 τοὺς ἄρχοντας: *the leaders*; acc. subject
 ἐπιμελεστέρους: comparative, predicate
 23 τοὺς νῦν: *those at present*; attributive
 position modifying ἄρχοντας
 τῶν πρόσθεν: *than those...*; i.e. leaders in
 the past; gen. of comparison.
 23 πολὺ...εὐτακτοτέρους: see line 22

τοὺς ἀρχομένους (γενέσθαι): *that those
 being ruled...*; acc. subject, add inf.
 24 τοῖς ἄρχουσι νῦν ἢ (τοῖς ἄρχουσι)
 πρόσθεν: dat. pl., ἄρχων; obj.
 of πειθομένων
 25 ἦν...ἀπειθῆ: (*that*) *if...*; ἐάν + 3s pres.
 subj.,
 equivalent to a fut. more vivid condition
 (δεῖ) ψηφίσασθαι: main verb: add δεῖ
 from line 22; everything else is ind. disc.
 26 τὸν...ἐντυγχάνοντα...κολάζειν: *that the
 one chancing upon...*; i.e. anyone present at
 the time; ind. disc. after ψηφίσασθαι
 ἡμῶν: *among...*; partitive gen.
 σὺν..ἀρχοντι: i.e. you must help the leader
 punish the disobedient to maintain order
 27 πλείστον: superlative, adverbial acc.
 ἐψευσμένοι ἔσονται: *will turn out to be
 deceived*; 'will have been deceived,' a
 periphrastic fut. pf. pass. (pf. pass. pple +
 fut. dep. εἰμί)
 τῆδε...ἡμέρα: *on...*; dat. of time when

F ἡμέρα μυρίους ὄφονται ἀνθ' ἐνὸς Κλεάρχους τοὺς οὐδενὶ 1
 ἐ
 π ἐπιτρέφοντας κακῶ εἶναι. 32. ἀλλὰ γὰρ καὶ περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρα·
 ἴσως γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι αὐτίκα παρέσονται. ὅτω οὖν ταῦτα
 δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, ἐπικυρωσάτω ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα ἔργα
 περαίνηται. εἰ δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτη, τολμάτω καὶ ὁ 5
 ἰδιώτης διδάσκειν· πάντες γὰρ κοινῆς σωτηρίας δεόμεθα.'

33. μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· 'ἀλλ' εἰ μὲν τινος ἄλλου
 δεῖ πρὸς τούτοις οἷς λέγει Ξενοφῶν, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐξέσται
 ποιεῖν· ἃ δὲ νῦν εἶρηκε δοκεῖ μοι ὡς τάχιστα ψηφίσασθαι

αὐτίκα: straightway, at once; presently, 3
 βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 5
 διδάσκω: to teach, instruct, tell, 3
 ἔξ-εστι: it is allowed, it is possible, 6
 ἐπι-κυρώω: to ratify, confirm, 1
 ἐπι-τρέπω: to permit, allow, entrust, 2
 ἔργον, τό: work, labor, deed, act, action, 4
 ἰδιώτης, -ου, ὁ: private citizen/soldier, 1
 ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 5
 Κλεάρχος, ὁ: Clearchus, 5

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, shared; public, 4
 μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 4
 μυρίος, -η, -ον: numberless, countless, 4
 πάρ-εμι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 7
 περαίνω: accomplish, act, bring to an end, 3
 σωτηρία, ἡ: deliverance, safety, security, 6
 τολμάω: to dare, venture, undertake, 5
 ψηφίζομαι: to vote, pass a vote, 2
 ὥρα, ἡ: season, time, period of time, 4

1 ὄφονται: fut. dep. ὀράω
 ἀντ(ι) ἐνὸς Κλεάρχους: gen. sg. εἷς
 τοὺς οὐδενὶ...εἶναι: *permitting no one to be a coward*; 'entrusting to no one to be bad'; attributive position with μυρίους
 2 ἀλλὰ γὰρ: *and yet*
 καί: *also*; as opposed to just talking
 ὥρα (ἐστίν): (*it is*)...; impersonal
 περαίνειν: *to act*; as opposed to just talking
 3 παρέσονται: fut. dep. πάρ-εμι
 ὅτω: *to whomever*...; dat. sg. ὅστις
 4 καλῶς ἔχειν: ἔχω ('holds' or 'is disposed')
 + adv. is often equiv. to the verb 'to be' + pres. adj.; καλῶς, 'well'
 ἐπικυρωσάτω: *Let*...; 3s aor. imperative
 ὡς: *as...as possible*; + superlative adv.
 ἵνα...περαίνηται: purpose, pres. pass. subj.; ταῦτα is subject

ἔργω: *in*...; at. of manner
 5 εἰ τι: *if anything... (is)*...; i.e. another plan, Supply linking verb
 ταύτη: *in this way*; dat. of manner
 τολμάτω: *let*...; 3s pres. imperative
 6 κοινῆς σωτηρίας: *from*...; gen. of separation
 7 εἶπεν: aor. λέγω
 τινος ἄλλου: *anything else*; separation
 8 δεῖ: *there is need of*; 'there is a lack from'
 πρὸς: *in addition to*...
 οἷς: *which*...; acc. pl. ἄ attracted into the dat. pl. of the antecedent
 9 ἐξέσται: 3s fut. ἔξεστι
 εἶρηκε: 3s pf. λέγω (stem ερ-); Xenophon is subject
 μοι: i.e. to Cheirisophus, who is speaking

ἄριστον εἶναι· καὶ ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα.’ 10
 34. ἀνέτειναν πάντες. ἀναστάς δὲ πάλιν εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· ‘ὦ
 ἄνδρες, ἀκούσατε ὧν προσδοκεῖ μοι. δῆλον ὅτι πορεύεσθαι
 ἡμᾶς δεῖ ὅπου ἔξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἀκούω δὲ κώμας εἶναι
 καλὰς οὐ πλέον εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας· 35. οὐκ ἂν οὖν
 θαυμάζοιμεν εἰ οἱ πολέμοι, ὥσπερ οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες τοὺς μὲν 15
 παριόντας διώκουσί τε καὶ δάκνουσιν, ἣν δύνωνται, τοὺς δὲ
 διώκοντας φεύγουσιν, εἰ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἡμῖν ἀπιούσιν ἐπακολου-
 θοῖεν. 36. ἴσως οὖν ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι πλαίσιον

ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
 ἀνα-τείνω: to lift up, raise; hold up, 5
 ἀπ-έχω: be distant/away, keep away from, 5
 ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, 2
 δάκνω: to bite, 2
 δειλός, -ή, -όν: timid, cowardly, 1
 δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 5
 εἴκοσι: twenty, 5
 ἐπ-ακολουθέω: to follow upon or after, 1

θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 2
 κύων, κυνός, ὅ, ἡ: dog, 1
 ὅπου: where, 5
 παρ-έρχομαι: to go pass, enter, 4
 πλαίσιον, τό: rectangle, oblong shape, 2
 πλείων, -οντος: more, greater, 2
 προσ-δοκέω: to seem best in addition, 1
 στάδιον, τό: stade (600 ft., 1/8 of a mile), 6
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ: hand, 5

10 ὅτῳ: (anyone) to whom; dat. sg. ὅστις;
 the missing antecedent is subject
 ἀνατεινάτω: let...; 3s aor. imperative
 11 ἀναστάς: nom. sg. aor. pple ἀν-ίστημι
 12 ὧν: (the things) which; τούτων ᾧ, the
 acc. relative is attracted into the gen. of the
 missing antecedent
 δῆλον ὅτι: clearly; ‘(it is) clear that’
 13 ἔξομεν: fut. ἔχω
 14 εἴκοσι σταδίων: than...; gen. comparison
 ἂν θαυμάζοιμεν: would...; apodosis in a \
 length fut. les vivid (εἰ opt., ἄν + opt)
 15 ὥσπερ: introducing a simile
 τοὺς παριόντας: those...; pres. pple παρ-

έρχομαι.
 ἦν: if...; ἐὰν + subj. in a present general
 condition within the simile
 τοὺς διώκοντας: those...; pres. pple
 17 εἰ καὶ αὐτοὶ: if (the enemy) themselves
 also; intensive, i.e. οἱ πολέμοι above
 ἀπιούσιν: dat. pl. pple ἀπ-έρχομαι
 ἐπακολουθοῖεν: should...; 3p pres. opt.,
 protatis in a future less vivid (εἰ opt.,
 ἂν + opt) with ἂν θαυμάζοιμεν above
 18 ἀσφαλέστερον (ἔστιν): (it is)...
 πλαίσιον: (hollow) rectangle; the baggage
 on the inside with troops on the front, rear,
 and two flanks

ποιησαμένους τῶν ὄπλων, ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρω εἴη. εἰ οὖν νῦν ἀποδειχθείη τίνας 20
 χρῆ ἡγεῖσθαι τοῦ πλαισίου καὶ τὰ πρόσθεν κοσμεῖν καὶ
 τίνας ἐπὶ τῶν πλευρῶν ἐκατέρων εἶναι, τίνας δ' ὀπισθοφυ-
 λακεῖν, οὐκ ἂν ὁπότε οἱ πολέμοι ἔλθοιεν βουλευέσθαι ἡμᾶς
 δέοι, ἀλλὰ χρώμεθα ἂν εὐθύς τοῖς τεταγμένοις. 37. εἰ μὲν οὖν
 ἄλλο τις βέλτιον ὄρα, ἄλλως ἐχέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, Χειρίσοφος 25
 μὲν ἡγοῖτο, ἐπειδὴ καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐστι· τῶν δὲ πλευ-
 ρῶν ἐκατέρων δύο τῶ πρεσβυτάτῳ στρατηγῷ ἐπιμελοίσθη-

ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
 ἀπο-δείκνυμι: appoint; point out, indicate, 1
 βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 5
 βουλευέω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 6
 ἐκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, 2
 ἐπι-μέλ(ε)ομαι: to care for, look after, (gen) 3
 εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once 7
 ἵνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 5
 κοσμέω: to order, arrange, adorn, 1

Λακεδαιμόνιος, -η, -ον: Lacedaemonian, 3
 ὀπισθο-φύλακῶς: to guard the rear, 3
 ὄχλος, ὄ: a crowd, throng, mob, 4
 πλαίσιον, τό: rectangle, oblong shape, 2
 πλευρά, ἡ: a rib, side, 4
 πρέσβυς, -εως, ὄ: old man; ambassador, 5
 σκευο-φόρον, τό: baggage-carrying mules, 2
 τάττω: draw up, post, form for battle, 6
 χρῆ: it is necessary, it is fitting; must, ought 2

19 ποιησαμένους: modifies ἡμῖν but
 attracted into acc. of the missing acc.
 subject ἡμᾶς
 ἵνα...εἴη: *in order that...might*; purpose
 clause in secondary seq., 3s opt. εἰμί
 20 ἀσφαλεστέρω: i.e. place, comparative
 εἰ...ἀποδειχθείη...ἂν...δέοι: *if it should be
 appointed...it would not be necessary*; fut.
 less vivid condition, impersonal aor. pass.
 opt, pres. opt.
 τίνας: *which (leaders)...*; or 'who,' acc.
 subject of ἡγεῖσθαι.
 21 ἡγεῖσθαι: *to lead* + gen.
 τὰ πρόσθεν: i.e. the frontguard
 22 τίνας: *which (leaders)...*; or 'who'
 ἐπὶ: *on..., over...*
 23 ἂν: with δέοι
 ὁπότε...ἔλθοιεν: *whenever...*; aor. opt.

ἔρχομαι in a past general temporal clause
 24 χρώμεθα ἂν: *we would...*; pres. opt.
 χράομαι in same apodosis as δέοι; this
 verb governs a dat. object
 τοῖς τεταγμένοις: *(the men) drawn up in
 battle*; 'the men in formation'; pf. pass.
 prple τάττω
 25 ὄρα: ὄραει, 3s pres. ὄραω
 ἄλλως ἐχέτω: *let it be...*; 3s pres.
 imperative; ἔχω ('be disposed,' 'hold') +
 adv. is often equiv. to 'to be' + pred. adj.
 26 ἡγοῖτο: *may...lead*; opt. of wish.
 ἐπειδὴ καὶ: *since also...*; causal
 27 δύο τῶ πρεσβυτάτῳ στρατηγῷ: dual
 nom. subject; superlative adj. 'old'
 ἐπιμελοίσθη: *let...*; dual 3rd person pres.
 imperative

ὀπισθοφυλακοῖμεν δ' ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτατοι ἐγὼ καὶ Τιμασίων 1
 τὸ νῦν εἶναι. 38. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως
 βουλευσόμεθα ὅ τι ἂν αἰεὶ κράτιστον δοκῆ εἶναι. εἰ δέ τις
 ἄλλο ὄρα βέλτιον, λεξάτω.' ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, εἶπεν·
 'ὄτω δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα.' ἔδοξε ταῦτα. 5
 39. 'νῦν τοίνυν,' ἔφη, 'ἀπιόντας ποιεῖν δεῖ τὰ δεδογμένα. καὶ
 ὅστις τε ὑμῶν τοὺς οἰκείους ἐπιθυμεῖ ἰδεῖν, μεμνήσθω ἀνὴρ
 ἀγαθὸς εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως τούτου τυχεῖν· ὅστις τε
 ζῆν ἐπιθυμεῖ, πειράσθω νικᾶν· τῶν μὲν γὰρ νικῶντων τὸ

αἰεῖ: always, forever, in every case, 3

ἀνα-τείνω: to lift up, raise; hold up, 5

ἀντι-λέγω: to speak against, deny, 1

βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 5

βουλευώ: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 6

ἐπι-θυμέω: desire, long, set one's heart on, 3

ζάω: to live, 5

κράτιστος, -η, -ον: strongest, mightiest, 5

λοιπός, ὅ: remaining, the rest, 7

μιμνήσκω: to recall, remember, 2

νέος, -α, -ον: young; new, novel, strange, 2

οἰκείος, ὅ: relative, kin, 3

ὀπισθο-φύλακω: to guard the rear, 3

Τιμασίων, ὅ: Timasion, 2

τοί-νυν: well then; therefore, accordingly, 4

χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ: hand, 5

1 ὀπισθοφθαλοῖμεν: *we should...*; 1p pres. opt. of wish

οἱ νεώτατοι... Τιμασίων: in apposition to ἡμεῖς; superlative

2 τὸ νῦν εἶναι: *for the present*; 'for the present time being'

τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν: *for the future*; 'for the remainder' acc. of duration

ταύτης... τάξεως: partitive gen. with pple

3 ὅ τι: *whatever...*; general relative clause, ἂν + 3s pres. subj. δοκεῖ

αἰεῖ: *in each instance*

4 ὄρα: ὁράει, 3s pres. ὁράω

λεξάτω: *let...*; 3s aor. imperative

ὄτω: (*anyone*) *to whom*; dat. sg. ὅστις the missing antecedent is subject of main verb

5 ἀνατεινάτω: *let...*; 3s aor. imperative

6 ἔφη: 3s impf. φημί

ἀπιόντας: acc. subject, pple ἀπ-έρχομαι

τὰ δεδογμένα: pf. pass. pple δοκέω

7 ὅστις: *whoever...*; 'anyone who,' missing antecedent is subject of μεμνήσθω

ὑμῶν: partitive gen.

ἰδεῖν: aor. inf. ὁράω

μεμνήσθω: *let...*; 3s pf. imperative

8 ἔστιν: *it is possible*

τυχεῖν: *to attain*; + partitive gen.; aor. inf. τυγχάνω.

9 ζῆν: inf. ζάω

πειράσθω: *let...*; 3s pres. imperative

νικᾶν: inf. α-contract verb

τῶν νικῶντων...(ἔστι): *belongs to...*; 'is of...'; possessive gen. pple as predicate

καίνειν, τῶν δὲ ἡττωμένων τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν ἐστὶ· καὶ εἴ τις 10
 δὲ χρημάτων ἐπιθυμεῖ, κρατεῖν πειράσθω· τῶν γὰρ νικούν-
 των ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἐαυτῶν σφάζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων
 λαμβάνειν.’

3. τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν καὶ ἀπελθόντες κατέκαιον 15
 τὰς ἀμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ περιττῶν ὅτου μὲν δέοιτό
 τις μετεδίδουσαν ἀλλήλοις, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἰς τὸ πῦρ ἐρρίπτουν.
 ταῦτα ποιήσαντες ἡριστοποιούντο. ἀριστοποιουμένων δὲ
 αὐτῶν ἔρχεται Μιθραδάτης σὺν ἵππεύσιν ὡς τριάκοντα, καὶ

ἀλλήλων: one another, 4
 ἄμαξη, ἡ: a wagon, cart, 2
 ἀν-ίστημι: to make stand up, raise; rise, 8
 ἀριστο-ποιέω: to make breakfast, 2
 ἐπι-θυμέω: desire, long, set one's heart on, 3
 ἡττώομαι: to be less, be weaker or inferior, 4
 καίνω: to kill, slay, 1
 κατα-καίω: to burn up, 2
 κρατέω: to be strong; conquer, prevail, 6
 μετα-δίδωμι: to give a part of or a share of, 1

Μιθραδάτης, ὁ: Mithradates, 6
 νικάω: to conquer, defeat, win, 9
 περιττός, -η, -ον: excessive, superfluous, 2
 πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 3
 ῥίπτω: throw, cast, 2
 σκηνή, ἡ: tent, 3
 σφάζω: to save, keep, preserve, 8
 τριάκοντα: thirty, 1
 χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: money, goods, 2

10 τῶν δὲ ἡττωμένων: *belongs to...*; 'is of...'; possessive gen. pple as predicate
 τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν: articular inf.
 11 ἐπιθυμεῖ: governs a gen.
 πειράσθω: *let...*; 3s pres. imperative
 τῶν νικούντων ἐστὶ: *belongs to...*; 'is of...'; possessive gen. pple
 12 καὶ...καὶ: *both...and...*
 τὰ: i.e. possessions
 14 τούτων λεχθέντων: abl. abs., aor. pass. λέγω.
 ἀπελθόντες: aor. pple ἀπέρχομαι

15 τῶν περιττῶν: *of the excess*; partitive gen.
 ὅτου δέοιτό: *(anything) which one lacks*;; οὔτινος, gen. of separation for relative ὅστις; opt. in a past general relative clause; antecedent is obj. of main verb
 16 τὰ δὲ ἄλλα: *other things*
 ἐρρίπτουν: 3p impf. ῥίπτω
 17 ἀριστοποιουμένων δὲ αὐτῶν: gen. abs.
 18 ὡς: *about, nearly*; as often when preceding numbers

καλεσάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει ᾧδε. 2. 'ἐγώ,
 ᾧ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, καὶ Κύρω πιστὸς ἦν, ὡς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, 20
 καὶ νῦν ὑμῶν εὖνους· καὶ ἐνθάδε δ' εἰμὶ σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ
 διάγων. εἰ οὖν ὀράφην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι βουλευομένους,
 ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας πάντας ἔχων.
 λέξατε οὖν πρὸς με τί ἐν νῶ ἔχετε ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὖνον
 καὶ βουλόμενον κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν τὸν στόλον ποιέισθαι.' 25
 3. βουλευομένοις τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε·
 καὶ ἔλεγε Χειρίσοφος· 'ἡμῖν δοκεῖ, εἰ μὲν τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς

ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 1
 βουλευέω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 6
 δι-άγω: lead across; pass life; delay, 3
 ἐάω: to allow (+inf.), 1
 ἐνθάδε: here, hither, there, thither, 1
 ἐπ-ήκοος, -ον: within ear-shot or hearing, 1
 εὖ-νους, -ουν: good-natured, kind, friendly, 2
 θεράπων, -ποντος, ὄ: attendant, servant, 2
 καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 3
 κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, shared; public, 4

19 καλεσάμενος: mid. pple suggests that Xenophon has someone do this on his behalf: hence, 'summon' rather than 'call'
 20 καί...καί: both...and
 ἦν: 3s impf. εἰμί
 ὡς: as...; parenthetical
 22 διάγων: delaying
 εἰ ὀράφην...ἔλθοιμι: if...should, would...; fut. less vivid (εἰ opt., ἂν opt.); 1s pres. ὀράω and aor. ἔρχομαι
 24 λέξατε: 1st aor. imper. λέγω

νοῦς, ὄ: mind, perception, heart, 2
 ᾧδε, ἧδε, τόδε: this, this here, 4
 πιστός -ή -όν: trustworthy; credible (dat.), 2
 στόλος, ὄ: expedition, journey, 4
 σωτήριον, τό: salvation, deliverance, 1
 φίλος, -α, -ον: friendly, dear; friend, kin, 5
 φόβος, ὄ: fear, terror, panic, 2
 ᾧδε: in this way, so, thus, 7

πρὸς με: in regard to...; governed by ἔχετε in the ind. question
 τί: what...; ind. questions
 νῶ: dat. νοῦς
 24 ὡς (ὄντα) φίλον: on the grounds of (being)...; 'since...' ὡς + pple (missing but modifying με) expresses cause
 κοινῇ: in common; dat. of manner
 26 τάδε: i.e. the following
 27 ἐᾷ: ἐάει, 3s pres. ἐάω

ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα 1
 ἀσινέστατα· ἦν δέ τις ἡμᾶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀποκωλύη, διαπολεμεῖν
 τούτῳ ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα.’ 4. ἐκ τούτου ἐπειράτο Μιθρα-
 δάτης διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορον εἶη βασιλέως ἄκοντος σωθῆναι.
 ἔνθα δὴ ἐγινώσκετο ὅτι ὑπόπεμπτος εἶη· καὶ γὰρ τῶν 5
 Τισσαφέρνους τις οἰκείων παρηκολουθήκει πίστει ἕνεκα.
 5. καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βέλτιον εἶναι δόγμα
 ποιήσασθαι τὸν πόλεμον ἀκήρυκτον εἶναι ἔστ’ ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ
 εἶεν· διέφθειρον γὰρ προσιόντες τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ ἕνα

ἀ-κήρυκτος, -ον: without herald or envoys, 1
 ἄ-πορος, -ον: impassable; impossible, 3
 ἀ-σινής, -ές: doing no harm; unharmed, 1
 ἄκων (ἀ-έκων), ἄκουσα, ἄκον: unwilling, 3
 ἀπο-κωλύω: to hinder or prevent from, 1
 βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 5
 δια-πολεμέω: wage war/fight through, 1
 δια-πορεύομαι: to travel or pass through, 1
 δια-φθείρω: to corrupt, destroy utterly, 2
 διδάσκω: to teach, instruct, tell, 3
 δόγμα, -ατος, τό: decree; opinion, 1

ἕνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen.), 5
 ἔνθα: here, there, then, where, 6
 κράτιστος, -η, -ον: strongest, mightiest, 5
 Μιθραδάτης, ὁ: Mithradates, 6
 οἴκα-δε: homeward, home, 4
 οἰκείος, ὁ: relative, kin, 3
 παρ-ακολουθέω: to follow alongside, 1
 πίστις, -εως ὁ: trust, loyalty; pledge, 2
 προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 6
 ὑπό-πεμπτος, -ον: sent secretly or
 underhandedly 1

- 1 ἀπιέναι: aor. ppl. ἐκλείπω
 ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα ἀσινέστατα: *as...as we may...*; or ‘as...we may...’ relative clause of comparison; ὡς + superlative (here, adv.) often means ‘as...as possible;’ in this case, the verb is expressed
 2 ἦν ἀποκωλύη... (δοκεῖ) διαπολεμεῖν: *if...*; ἔαν + 3s subj.
 τῆς ὁδοῦ: *from...*; gen. of separation.
 3 ἐκλιπόντες: aor. ppl. ἐκλείπω
 ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα: *as...as we may...*; see note for line 1
 ἐκ τούτου: *after this;* ‘from this’
 ἐπειράτο: impf. mid. πειράω
 4 ὡς...εἶη: *that it was...*; impersonal ind. disc., opt. εἰμί replaces ind. in secondary seq.
 βασιλέως ἄκοντος: gen. abs.
 σωθῆναι: aor. pass. inf. σώζω
 5 ἔνθα δὴ: *just then;* intensive
 ἐγινώσκετο: *it was...*; i.e. by the Greeks

- who are listening; impersonal impf. pass.
 ὅτι...εἶη: *that (Mithradates)...*; i.e. he has ulterior motives; ind. disc. with 3s pres. opt. in secondary seq.
 τῶν...οἰκείων: partitive with τις
 6 Τισσαφέρνους: Τισσαφέρνεος, gen. sg.
 ἕνεκα: + preceding gen.; i.e. to ensure that Mithradates does was he is supposed to;
 7 ἐκ τούτου: *after this;* ‘from this’
 δόγμα: *decree*
 ἀκήρυκτον: i.e. on in which heralds from the enemy would not be received
 8 ἔστ(ε)...εἶεν: *as long as...*; ἔσ-οτε, ‘ut to when’ opt. in a past general temporal clause
 9 διέφθειρον: (*the barbarians*) *kept trying to corrupt;* conative or customary impf.
 προσιόντες: nom. pl. ppl προσέρχομαι
 ἕνα: acc. εἷς

γε λοχαγὸν διέφθειραν Νίκαρχον Ἀρκάδα, καὶ ᾤχετο ἀπιὼν 10
 νυκτὸς σὺν ἀνθρώποις ὡς εἴκοσι.

6. μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες καὶ διαβάντες τὸν Ζαπάταν
 ποταμὸν ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον
 ἐν μέσῳ ἔχοντες. οὐ πολὺ δὲ προεληλυθῶτων αὐτῶν ἐπι-
 φαίνεται πάλιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης, ἰππέας ἔχων ὡς διακοσίους 15
 καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς τετρακοσίους μάλα ἐλαφροὺς
 καὶ εὐζώνους. 7. καὶ προσήει μὲν ὡς φίλος ὢν πρὸς τοὺς
 Ἕλληνας· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο, ἐξαπίνης οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν

ἀριστάω: to take breakfast, take a meal, 1

Ἄρκας, Ἀρκάδος, ὁ: Arcadian, 2

δια-φθείρω: to corrupt, destroy utterly, 2

διακόσιοι, -αι, -α: two hundred, 2

ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 2

εἴκοσι: twenty, 5

ἐλαφρός, -ά, -όν: light in weight, 1

ἐξαπίνης: suddenly, 2

ἐπι-φαίνομαι: show oneself, appear, 5

εὐ-ζώνος, -ον: well-girdled, nimble, active, 1

Ζαπάτας, ὁ: Zapatas, Zab (river), 1

μάλα: very (much), quite, exceedingly, 5

μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 4

Μιθραδάτης, ὁ: Mithradates, 6

Νίκαρχος, ὁ: Nicarchus, 1

οἴχομαι: to go off, depart, go, 3

ὄχλος, ὁ: a crowd, throng, mob, 4

προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 6

σφενδονήτης, -ου, ὁ: slinger, 6

τάττω: draw up, post, form for battle, 6

τετρακόσιοι, -αι, -α: four hundred, 1

τοξότης, ὁ: an archer, Bowman, 5

ὑπο-ζύγιον, τό: a yoke-animal, ox, 2

φίλος, -α, -ον: friendly, dear; friend, kin, 5

10 γε: at least; restrictive and emphatic

διέφθειραν: 3p aor.; i.e. successfully, in

contrast with the conative impf. above

ᾤχετο: impf. οἴχομαι

ἀπιὼν: translation; aor. συνέρχομαι

11 νυκτὸς: during...; gen. of time within

ὡς: about, nearly; as often when

preceding numbers

12 μετὰ: after...

διαβάντες: aor. pple διαβαίνω

13 τεταγμένοι: pf. pass. mid. pple, τάττω

14 ἐν μέσῳ: i.e. of the rectangle formation

πολὺ: far; adverbial acc. (acc. of extent)

προεληλυθῶτων αὐτῶν: gen. abs.; pf.

act. pple προσέρχομαι

15 ὡς: about, nearly; as often when

preceding numbers

16 εἰς: up to

προσήει: 3s impf. προσέρχομαι

17 ὡς φίλος ὢν: on the grounds of...; or 'as

if...' ὡς + pple (nom. sg. εἰμί) expresses

alleged cause from the character's point of

view

18 ἐγένοντο: i.e. Mithridates and those with

him

οἱ μὲν...οἱ δὲ: some...others..

ἐτόξευον καὶ ἵππεῖς καὶ πεζοί, οἱ δ' ἐσφενδόνων καὶ ἐτί-
 τρωσκον. οἱ δὲ ὀπισθοφύλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπασχον μὲν 20
 κακῶς, ἀντεποιοῦν δ' οὐδέν· οἳ τε γὰρ Κρήτες βραχύτερα
 τῶν Περσῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἅμα ψιλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω τῶν ὄπλων
 κατεκέκλειντο, οἱ δὲ ἀκοντιστὰὶ βραχύτερα ἠκόντιζον ἢ ὡς
 ἐξικνεῖσθαι τῶν σφενδονητῶν. 8. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶντι ἐδόκει
 διωκτέον εἶναι· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν ὀπλιτῶν καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν 25
 οἱ ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες· διώκοντες δὲ οὐδένα
 κατελάμβανον τῶν πολεμίων. 9. οὔτε γὰρ ἵππεῖς ἦσαν τοῖς
 Ἑλλησιν οὔτε οἱ πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐκ πολλοῦ φεύγοντας
 ἐδύναντο καταλαμβάνειν ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ· πολὺ γὰρ οὐχ οἶόν

ἀκοντίζω: to throw a javelin, 1
 ἀκοντιστής, ὁ: javelin-thrower, 1
 ἀντι-ποιέω: to do in return, 2
 βραχύς, -έα, -ύ: short, 3
 διωκτέος, -α, -ον: to be pursued, 1
 εἴσω: inside, within (gen.), 2
 ἐξ-ικνεόμαι: to arrive at, reach, 4
 κατα-κλείω: to close in, shut in, 2
 Κρής, Κρητός, ὁ: a Cretan, 3
 οἶος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 6

ὀπισθο-φύλακέω: to guard the rear, 3
 ὀπισθο-φύλαξ, -ακος, ὁ: rear-guard, 1
 ὀπλίτης, -ου ὁ: hoplite, armed soldier, 5
 πεζός, ἡ, ὄν: on foot, 7
 πελταστής, ὁ: light-shield troop, peltast, 7
 σφενδονήτης, -ου, ὁ: slinger, 6
 τιτρώσκω: to wound, injure, damage, 6
 χωρίον, τό: space, distance; place, spot, 4
 ψιλός, -όν: bare, stript, simple, 1

19 ἐτόξευον: *began to...*; inchoative impf.
 καί...καί...: *both...and...*; in apposition to
 the subject
 οἱ δ(ἐ): *and others...*; in contrast to οἱ μὲν
 ἐσφενδόνων: ἐσφενδόναον, 3p. impf.
 21 βραχύτερα: *shorter (distances)*; adverbial
 acc. (inner acc.), i.e. 'shot shorter shots'
 22 τῶν Περσῶν: *than...*; gen. of comparison
 ψιλοὶ: i.e. without armor
 εἴσω τῶν ὄπλων: i.e. in the rectangle
 formation
 23 κατεκέκλειντο: plpf. pass.
 βραχύτερα: *shorter (throws)*; adverbial
 acc. (inner acc.), i.e. 'throw shorter throws'
 ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθαι: *so as to...*; result clause
 identical to ὥστε + inf.;
 24 τῶν σφενδονητῶν: partitive gen., object
 of inf.
 ἐκ τούτου: *after this;* 'from this'
 25 διωκτέον εἶναι: *that (they) must...*; 'that it

is...'impers. verbal adj. εἰμί expressing
 necessity
 (οἱ) τῶν ὀπλιτῶν καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν:
(those) of...; partitive gen., the missing
 pronoun is subject of ἐδίωκον
 26 ἔτυχον: aor. τυγχάνω, 'happen to,' +
 complementary pple
 27 οὔτε...οὔτε: *neither...nor...*
 ἦσαν: 3p impf. εἰμί
 τοῖς Ἑλλησιν: dat. of possession
 28 ἐκ πολλοῦ: *at a great (distance), from*
afar
 29 ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ: *within...*
 πολὺ: *far;* adverbial acc.
 οἶόν τε ἦν: *it was not possible;* οἶός τε
 εἰμί + inf. is a common idiom for 'to be
 able' or 'to be possible'

τε ἦν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου στρατεύματος διώκειν· 10. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι 1
 ἵππεις καὶ φεύγοντες ἅμα ἐτίρωσκον εἰς τοῦπισθεν τοξεύοντες
 ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, ὅπόσον δὲ διώξειαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, τοσοῦτον
 πάλιν ἐπαναχωρεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει. 11 ὥστε τῆς ἡμέρας ὅλης
 διήλθον οὐ πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δειλῆς 5
 ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας. ἔνθα δὴ πάλιν ἀθυμία ἦν. καὶ
 Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντα
 ἠτιῶντο ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος καὶ αὐτός τε ἐκινδύνευε
 καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο βλάπτειν. 12. ἀκούσας

ἀ-θυμία ἢ: faintheartedness, lack of courage 2
 αἰτιάζομαι: accuse, charge; blame, 3
 ἀφ-ικνέομαι: to come, arrive, 7
 βλάπτω: to harm, hurt, damage, 3
 δειλή, ἢ: afternoon, 3
 δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 3
 εἴκοσι: twenty, 5
 ἔνθα: here, there, where, 6
 ἐπ-ανα-χωρέω: to return, move back, 1
 κινδυνεύω: take risks, venture; it is likely, 1
 μάχομαι: to fight, contend, quarrel, dispute 7

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 1
 ὀπισθεν: behind, rear; in the future; (gen.), 4
 ὅπόσος, -α, -ον: as much/many/great as, 6
 πέντε: five, 2
 πλείων, -οντος: more, greater, 2
 πρέσβυς, -εως, ὁ: old man; ambassador, 5
 στάδιον, τό: stade (600 ft., 1/8 of a mile), 6
 τιτρώσκω: to wound, injure, damage, 6
 τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: so great, so much,
 so many, 7
 φάλαξ, φάλαγγος, ὁ: phalanx, 2

2 καὶ φεύγοντες: *although...*; 'even while'
 καὶ suggests the pple is concessive
 εἰς τὸ (ὀ)πισθεν: *behind them*; 'to the rear'
 3 ὅπόσον...τοσοῦτον: *as far as*; or
 'however far...so far,' correlatives (relative
 and demonstrative); acc. of extent
 ὅπόσον δὲ διώξειαν οἱ Ἕλληνες: *however
 far...*; + 3p aor. opt. in a past general
 relative clause
 4 ἐπαναχωρεῖν μαχομένους: *that (the
 Greeks)...*; μαχομένους modifies the
 missing acc. subject; i.e. when the Greeks
 fell back, the Persian cavalry would stop
 fleeing and attack

τῆς ἡμέρας ὅλης: *during...*; gen. of time
 within
 5 διήλθον: aor.
 πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίων: *than...*; gen. of
 comparison
 δειλῆς: *during...*; gen. of time within
 6 εἰς: *at...*
 ἔνθα δὴ: *just then*; intensive
 8 ἠτιῶντο: impf. αἰτιάζομαι
 καὶ αὐτός τε...καὶ: *and he himself both...
 and*
 9 οὐδὲν: *not at all*; adverbial acc. (acc. of
 extent in degree) modifying μᾶλλον

δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὀρθῶς αἰτιῶντο καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἔργον 10
αὐτοῖς μαρτυροίη. ‘ἀλλ’ ἐγώ,’ ἔφη, ‘ἠναγκάσθην διώκειν,
ἐπειδὴ ἐώρων ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ μένειν κακῶς μὲν πάσχοντας,
ἀντιποιεῖν δὲ οὐ δυναμένους. 13. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδιώκομεν, ἀληθῆ,’
ἔφη, ‘ὕμεις λέγετε· κακῶς μὲν γὰρ ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον 15
ἐδυνάμεθα τοὺς πολεμίους, ἀνεχωροῦμεν δὲ παγχαλέπως.
14. τοῖς σὺν θεοῖς χάρις ὅτι οὐ σὺν πολλῇ ῥώμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν
ὀλίγοις ἦλθον, ὥστε βλάψαι μὲν μὴ μεγάλα, δηλώσαι δὲ ὧν
δεόμεθα. 15. νῦν γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι τοξεύουσι καὶ σφενδονῶσι

αἰτιάομαι: accuse, charge; blame, 3

ἀληθής, -ές: true, 1

ἀνα-χωρέω: to go back, withdraw, 1

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 4

ἀντι-ποιέω: to do in return, 2

βλάπτω: to harm, hurt, damage, 3

δηλόω: to make clear, show, reveal, 2

ἔργον, τό: work, labor, deed, act, 4

μαρτυρέω: to bear evidence, 1

ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, right, 2

παγ-χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: very difficult, 1

ῥώμη, ἡ: (bodily) strength, 1

χάρις, χάριτος, ἡ: gratitude, thanks, favor, 1

10 αἰτιῶντο...μαρτυροίη: 3s pres. opt.
replacing ind. in ind. disc. secondary seq.

αὐτό: intensive

11 αὐτοῖς: *for...*; dat. of interest

ἔφη: impf. φημί

ἠναγκάσθην: 1s aor. pass.

12 ἐώρων: ἐώρασον, 1s impf. ὁράω

τῷ μένειν: articular inf.: translate as a
gerund (-ing)

13 ἀληθῆ: *the truth*; neut. acc. ἀληθέα, ‘true
things’

14 κακῶς ποιεῖν: *to treat badly*; i.e. harm
οὐδὲν: *not at all*; adverbial acc. (acc. of
extent in degree) modifying μᾶλλον

16 χάρις (ἔστω): (*let there be*)...; supply a
verb, here a 3rd pers. pres. imperative

ὅτι: *because*

17 ἦλθον: 3p aor. ἔρχομαι; i.e. the enemy

ὥστε βλάψαι...δηλώσαι: *so as to...*;
result clause with aor. inf.

μεγάλα: neut. pl. inner acc. (‘inflict
great harms’); often translated as an adv.

ὧν: (*those things*) *which...*; (ἐκεῖνα) ὧν;
the relative pronoun is gen. of separation;
supply the missing antecedent as acc. obj.;

i.e. without many losses their own
weaknesses have been revealed

ὅσον οὔτε οἱ Κρήτες ἀντιτοξεύειν δύνανται οὔτε οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς
 βάλλοντες ἐξικνεῖσθαι· ὅταν δὲ αὐτοὺς διώκωμεν, πολὺ μὲν 20
 οὐχ οἶόν τε χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος διώκειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ
 δὲ οὐδ' εἰ ταχὺς εἴη πεζὸς πεζὸν ἂν διώκων καταλαμβάνοι ἐκ
 τόξου ρύματος. 16. ἡμεῖς οὖν εἰ μέλλομεν τούτους εἶργειν ὥστε
 μὴ δύνασθαι βλάπτειν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, σφενδονητῶν τὴν
 ταχίστην δεῖ καὶ ἰππέων. ἀκούω δ' εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύ- 25
 ματι ἡμῶν Ῥοδίου, ὧν τοὺς πολλοὺς φασιν ἐπίστασθαι
 σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ διπλάσιον φέρεσθαι τῶν

ἀντι-τοξεύω: to shoot in return, 1
 βάλλω: to throw, cast; shoot, 3
 βέλος, -εος, τό: missile, arrow, dart, 2
 βλάπτω: to harm, hurt, damage, 3
 δι-πλάσιος, -α, -ον: two-fold, double, 1
 ἐξ-ικνεῖμαι: to arrive at, reach, 4
 εἶργω: to shut out, exclude, 2
 Κρής, Κρητός, ὄ: a Cretan, 3
 μέλλω: to be about to, intend to; delay, 7
 οἶος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 6

ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 3
 πεζός, ἦ, ὄν: on foot, 7
 Ῥόδιος, -α, -ον: Rhodian, of Rhodes, 5
 ρῦμα, -ατος τό: (something) drawn/pulled, 1
 σφενδονήτης, -ου, ὄ: slinger, 6
 τόξον, τό: bow, 2
 φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, convey, 7
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἦ: hand, 5
 χωρίον, τό: space, distance; place, spot, 4

19 ὅσον: *as far as*
 οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες: *those...*; i.e. οἱ ἀκοντισταί, 'javelin-throwers'
 20 ὅταν...διώκωμεν: *whenever...*; an + subj. in a general relative clause
 πολὺ...χωρίον: *for...*; acc. of extent
 21 οἶόν τε ἦν: *it was not possible*; οἶός τε εἰμί + inf. is a common idiom for 'to be able' or 'to be possible'
 ἐν ὀλίγῳ (χωρίῳ): *in a short (distance)*
 22 οὐδ(ὲ) εἰ...εἴη, ἂν καταλαμβάνοι: *not even if...should, would...*; fut. less vivid (εἰ opt., ἂν opt.); πεζὸς is the Greek's infantry
 πεζὸν διώκων: i.e. the enemy's infantry
 ἐκ τόξου ρύματος: *from (the distance) of a drawn bow*; i.e. the distance a bow can shoot
 23 εἰ μέλλομεν, δεῖ: *if...should...*; mixed

condition
 ὥστε...: *so as...to...*; result clause
 τὴν ταχίστην: adverbial acc., superlative equiv. to ταχίστα
 25 δεῖ: *there is need for...*; 'there is lacking' + gen. separation
 εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν Ῥοδίου: *that Rhodians...*; ind. disc.
 26 ὧν: *of...*; relative, partitive gen.
 φασιν: 3p pres. φημί; i.e. people in general
 ἐπίστασθαι: *know how*
 27 σφενδονᾶν: α-contract inf.
 τὸ βέλος...φέρεσθαι: *and that...*; ind. disc. with pres. mid. or pass. inf.
 καί: adverbial
 διπλάσιον: *for... (distance)*; adverbial acc. (acc. of extent)

Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν. 17. ἐκεῖναι γὰρ διὰ τὸ χειροπληθέσι τοῖς 1
λίθοις σφενδονᾶν ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξικνουῦνται, οἱ δὲ Ῥόδιοι καὶ
ταῖς μολυβδίσιν ἐπίστανται χρῆσθαι. 18. ἦν οὖν αὐτῶν ἐπισκε-
ψώμεθα τίνες πέπανται σφενδόνας, καὶ †τούτω† μὲν δώμεν
αὐτῶν ἀργύριον, τῷ δὲ ἄλλας πλέκειν ἐθέλοντι ἄλλο ἀργύριον 5
τελώμεν, καὶ τῷ σφενδονᾶν ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ ἐθέλοντι ἄλλην
τινὰ ἀτέλειαν εὐρίσκωμεν, ἴσως τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς
ὠφελεῖν. 19. ὀρώ δὲ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι, τοὺς μὲν
τινας παρ' ἐμοί, τοὺς δὲ τῶν Κλεάρχου καταλελειμμένους,

ἀ-τέλεια, ἡ: exception, immunity, 1
ἀργύριον, τό: silver (coin); piece of silver, 3
βραχὺς, -έα, -ύ: short, 3
ἐξ-ικνεύομαι: to arrive at, reach, 4
ἐπι-σκέπτομαι: to examine, consider, 1
εὐρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 3
ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable 6
κατα-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 5
Κλεάρχος, ὁ: Clearchus, 5
λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 3
μολυβδίς, -ίδος, ἡ: slingbullet, lead ball, 1

- 1 τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν: *than...*; gen. of comparison
ἐκεῖναι: pl. demonstrative; i.e. Persian slings
διὰ: *on account of...*
τὸ...σφενδονᾶν: articular inf.: translate as a gerund (-ing)
2 ἐπὶ βραχὺ: *over a short (range)*; i.e. do not travel far
καὶ: *also*
3 ἐπίστανται: *know how*
ἦν ἐπισκεψώμεθα...εὐρίσκωμεν,... φανοῦνται: *if...*; fut. more vivid condition (ἐαν+ subj., fut.); protasis has four verbs
αὐτῶν: *among...*; partitive gen. i.e. enemy
4 τίνες..σφενδόνας: *who...*; ind. question
πέπανται: pf. mid. πάομαι
†τούτω†: The obelus † indicates that the the intervening word is corrupt but the editor is not sure how to emend it.
δώμεν: 1p aor. subj. δίδωμι; same clause
αὐτῶν: *for them*; i.e. for the slings
5 τῷ...ἐθέλοντι: *to one...*; dat. ind. obj.,

πάομαι: to get, acquire, 1
παρά: from, at, to the side of, in respect to, 6
Περσικός, -ή, -όν: Persian, 3
πλέκω: to twist, weave, braid, 1
Ῥόδιος, -α, -ον: Rhodian, of Rhodes, 5
σφενδόνη, ἡ: sling, stone (from a sling), 4
τάττω: draw up, post, form for battle, 6
τελέω: to pay; complete, fulfill, 1
χειρ-πλήρης, -ες: large as a hand, handful, 1
ὠφελέω: to help, to be of use, benefit, 2

- pres. pple ἐθέλω
ἄλλας: i.e. σφενδόνας
6 τῷ...ἐθέλοντι: *to one...*; dat. ind. obj.,
pres. pple ἐθέλω
σφενδονᾶν: α-contract inf.; i.e. volunteer to serve as a slinger
ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ: *in formation*; 'in the formed (ranks)' pf. pass. pple τάττω
7 φανοῦνται: fut. mid./pass. φαίνω (φανε-)
8 ὠφελεῖν: explanatory (exegetical) inf. equiv. to acc. of respect following ἱκανοί
ἵππους ὄντας: i.e. that there are...; ind. disc. equiv. to ἵππους εἶναι
τοὺς μὲν...τοὺς δὲ: *some...others...*; in distributive apposition to ἵππους
9 παρ(ὰ) μοι: *with me, in my quarters*
τῶν (ἵππων) Κλεάρχου: *among those (horses) of Clearchus*; i.e. not taken away by the cavalry that deserted; Clearchus the Spartan once led the expedition and by deception was caught and executed by the Persians
καταλελειμμένους: pf. pass. pple

πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους σκευοφοροῦντας. ἂν 10
 οὖν τούτους πάντας ἐκλέξαντες σκευοφόρα μὲν ἀντιδῶμεν,
 τοὺς δὲ ἵππους εἰς ἰππέας κατασκευάσωμεν, ἴσως καὶ οὐτοί
 τι τοὺς φεύγοντας ἀνιάσουσιν.’ 20. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. καὶ ταύτης
 τῆς νυκτὸς σφενδονῆται μὲν εἰς διακοσίους ἐγένοντο, ἵπποι δὲ
 καὶ ἰππεῖς ἐδοκιμάσθησαν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ εἰς πεντήκοντα, καὶ 15
 σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες αὐτοῖς ἐπορίσθησαν, καὶ ἵππαρχος
 ἐπεστάθη Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος.

1. μείναντες δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐπορεύοντο

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6
 αἰχμ-άλωτος, -ον: taken by spear, captive, 1
 ἀνιάζω: to make feel grief, distress, pain, 1
 ἀντι-δίδωμι: to give in return, 1
 διακοσίοι, -αι, -α: two hundred, 2
 δοκιμάζω: to examine and approve, 1
 ἐκ-λέγω: to pick out, 1
 ἐφ-ίστημι: set upon, place upon, 2
 θώραξ, θώρακος, ὄ: breastplate, corset, 2
 ἵππαρχος, ὄ: hipparch, leader of the horse, 1

κατα-σκευάζω: to prepare, build, equip, 3
 Λύκιος, -η, -ον: Lycian, 1
 πεντήκοντα: fifty, 4
 Πολύστρατος, -ου, ὄ: Polystratus, 1
 πορίζω: to provide, furnish, carry, 3
 σκευο-φορέω: to carry baggage, 2
 σκευο-φόρον, τό: baggage-carrying mules, 2
 σπολάς, σπολάδος, ἦ: leathern garment, 1
 σφενδονήτης, -ου, ὄ: slinger, 6
 ὑστεραῖος, -α, -ον: the next day; later, 4

10 πολλοὺς...ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους: *and many other captives also*; Xenophon is talking not about humans but about horses used as pack-animals

ἂν...ἀντιδῶμεν...ἀνιάσουσιν: *if...; fut. more vivid (ἐάν subj., fut.)*

11 τούτους πάντας: *i.e. horses*

ἀντιδῶμεν: *put in place of; aor. subj.*

12 εἰς: *for...; expressing purpose*

13 τι: *somewhat; inner acc. ‘some distress’*

τοὺς φεύγοντας: *those...; i.e. the enemy*

ἀνιάσουσιν: *fut.*

καὶ: *also*

ταύτης τῆς νυκτὸς: *during...; gen. time within*

14 εἰς: *up to; i.e. about*

15 ἐδοκιμάσθησαν: *3p aor. pass.*

τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ (ἡμέρᾳ): *on...; dat. of time when*

εἰς: *up to; i.e. about*

16 ἐπορίσθησαν: *3p aor. pass.*

17 ἐπεστάθη: *3s aor. pass.*

18 μείναντες: *aor. pplē μένω*

ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν: *for...; acc. duration*

τῇ ἄλλῃ (ἡμέρᾳ): *see τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ above*

πρωαίτερον ἀναστάντες· χαράδραν γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς δια-
βῆναι ἐφ' ἣ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ἐπιθοῖντο αὐτοῖς διαβαίνουσιν οἱ 20
πολέμιοι. 2. διαβεβηκόσι δὲ αὐτοῖς πάλιν φαίνεται Μιθρα-
δάτης, ἔχων ἰππέας χιλίους, τοξότας δὲ καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς
τετρακισχιλίους· τοσοῦτους γὰρ ἤτησε Τισσαφέρην, καὶ
ἔλαβεν ὑποσχόμενος, ἂν τούτους λάβῃ, παραδώσει αὐτῷ
τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καταφρονήσας, ὅτι ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν προσβολῇ 25
ὀλίγους ἔχων ἔπαθε μὲν οὐδέν, πολλὰ δὲ κακὰ ἐνόμιζε

αἰτέω: to ask, ask for, beg, 2
ἐπι-τίθημι: set upon, attack; put upon; add, 4
κατα-φρονέω: to despise, think down on, 1
Μιθραδάτης, ὄ: Mithradates, 6
παρα-δίδωμι: to hand over, give over, 3
προσ-βολή, ἦ: attack, assault, 1
πρωί: early (in the day), 1
σφενδονήτης, -ου, ὄ: slinger, 6

19 πρωαίτερον: comparative adv.
ἀναστάντες: aor. pple ἀνίστημι
διαβῆναι: aor. inf. διαβαίνω
20 ἐπ(ι) ἣ...: *on which*...; relative, dat. place
where
μὴ ἐπιθοῖντο: *lest*...; 'that,' fearing clause
with 3p aor. opt. ἐπι-τίθημι in secondary
seq.
διαβαίνουσιν: dat. pl. pres. pple
21 διαβεβηκόσι: (*after*)...; dat. pl. pf. pple
διαβαίνω modifying αὐτοῖς
22 εἰς: *up to*...; 'nearly'
ἤτησε: aor. αἰτέω 'ask (acc.) for (acc.)'
24 ὑποσχόμενος: aor. pple ὑπισχνέομαι
ἂν... λάβῃ, παραδώσειν: *that if*...
(Mithridates) *would*...; ind. disc. governed

τετρα-κισ-χιλίοι, -αι, -α: four thousand, 2
τοξότης, ὄ: an archer, Bowman, 5
τοσοῦτος, -αυτή, -οὔτο: so great, so much,
so many, 7
ὑπ-ισχνέομαι: to promise, 2
φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 7
χαράδρα, ἦ: mountain stream bed, ravine, 4
χιλίοι, -αι, -α: thousand, 1

by ὑποσχόμενος; a fut. less vivid with 3s
aor. subj. λαμβάνω and fut. inf. as
apodosis; typically, one typically expects
an opt. replacing an ἂν + subj. in secondary
seq.: Xenophon is grammatically incorrect
αὐτῷ: i.e. to Tissaphernes, ind. obj.
25 καταφρονήσας: nom. sg. pple
ὅτι: *because*
πρόσθεν: i.e. previous
26 ὀλίγους: Mithradates attacked with only a
few men
ἔπαθε: aor. πάσχω
πολλὰ κακὰ... ποιῆσαι: *that (he) had
done much harm*; ind. disc. with aor. inf.
govern'd by aor. νομίζω

ποιῆσαι. 3. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες ἀπέειχον τῆς 1
 χαράδρας ὅσον ὀκτῶ σταδίου, διέβαινε καὶ ὁ Μιθραδάτης
 ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν. παρήγγελτο δὲ τῶν τε πελταστῶν οὐς
 ἔδει διώκειν καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, καὶ τοῖς ἵππευσιν εἶρητο
 θαρροῦσι διώκειν ὡς ἐφευσιμένης ἱκανῆς δυνάμεως. 4. ἐπεὶ δὲ 5
 ὁ Μιθραδάτης κατειλήφει, καὶ ἤδη σφενδόνα καὶ τοξέματα
 ἐξικνούντο, ἐσήμηνε τοῖς Ἕλλησι τῇ σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐθύς
 ἔθεον ὁμόσε οἷς εἶρητο καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς ἤλαυνον· οἱ δὲ οὐκ
 ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. 5. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ

ἀπ-έχω: be distant/away, keep away from, 5
 δέχομαι: to receive, accept, 4
 δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: force (troops), strength, 5
 ἐλαύνω: to march, ride, drive, 1
 ἐξ-ικνέομαι: to arrive at, reach, 4
 εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once 7
 ἐφ-έπομαι: to follow after, pursue, 1
 θαρρέω: to be confident, take courage; be
 bold, 2
 θέω: to run, 1
 ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable 6
 Μιθραδάτης, ὁ: Mithradates, 6

- 1 διαβεβηκότες: pf. pple διαβαίνω
- τῆς χαράδρας: *from...*; . gen. separation
- 2 ὅσον: *as much as*; i.e. nearly; adverbial
 acc.
 ὀκτῶ σταδίου: *for...*; acc. of extent
 καί: *also*
- 3 δύναμιν: *force*; i.e. troops
- 7 παρήγγελτο: *orders had been passed*; 'it
 had been ordered,' impersonal plpf. pass.
 τῶν τε πελταστῶν...ὀπλιτῶν: (*to those*)
among both...and...; partitive gen.
 οὐς. διώκειν: *who...*; the relative is acc.
 subject of διώκειν; supply 'enemy' as obj.
- 4 εἶρητο: *it had been told*; i.e. ordered,
 impers. plpf. pass. λέγω (-εῖρ)
 θαρροῦσι: dat. pl. pple
- 5 ὡς ἐφευσιμένης ἱκανῆς δυνάμεως: *on the*

ὀκτώ: eight, 2
 ὁμό-σε: to the same place, 1
 ὀπλίτης, -ου ὁ: hoplite, armed soldier, 5
 παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 4
 πελταστής, ὁ: light-shield troop, peltast, 7
 σάλπιγξ, -ιγγος, ὁ: war-trumpet, 1
 σημαίνω: to show, point out, indicate, 1
 στάδιον, τό: stade (600 ft., 1/8 of a mile), 6
 σφενδόνη, ἡ: sling, stone (from a sling), 4
 τόξευμα, -ατος, τό: arrow, 3
 χαράδρα, ἡ: mountain stream bed, ravine, 4

- grounds that...*; 'since,' ὡς + gen. abs. with
 fut. pple expressing alleged cause; δύναμις
 again refers to 'force' or 'strength' of the
 enemy; fut. ἐφέπομαι
- 6 κατειλήφει: plpf. καταλαμβάνω; add
 'them' as object
 - 7 ἐξικνούντο: *began to...*; i.e. reach their
 targets; inchoative impf.
 τῇ σάλπιγγι: dat. means
 - 8 ἔθεον: *began to...*; inchoative impf. θέω
 οἷς εἶρητο: (*those*) *to whom...*; missing
 antecedent is subject of ἔθεον; for εἶρητο
 see line 4. These are Greek soldiers.
 - οἱ δὲ: *but they*; i.e. the enemy
 - 9 ἐδέξαντο: i.e. meet them in battle, δέχομαι
 ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν: *to...*; place to which

διώξει τοῖς βαρβάροις τῶν τε πεζῶν ἀπέθανον πολλοὶ καὶ 10
 τῶν ἰππέων ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ ζωοὶ ἐλήφθησαν εἰς ὀκτωκαίδεκα.
 τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἠκίσαντο, ὡς
 ὅτι φοβερῶτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἶη ὄραν. 6. καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέ-
 μοι οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπῆλθον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀσφαλῶς
 πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα 15
 ποταμόν. 7. ἐνταῦθα πόλις ἦν ἐρήμη μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ
 ἦν Λάρισα· ὤκουν δ' αὐτὴν τὸ παλαιὸν Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ
 τεύχους αὐτῆς ἦν τὸ εὖρος πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, ὕψος δ'

ἀ-σφαλής, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
 αἰκίζω: inflict torture/torment; maltreat, 2
 αὐτο-κέλευστος, -ον: self-bidden, 1
 ἀφ-ικνέομαι: to come, arrive, 7
 δίωξις, -εως, ἦ: pursuit, chase, 1
 εἴκοσι: twenty, 5
 ἔρημος, -η, -ον: deserted, desolate, 3
 εὖρος, τό: breadth, width, 4
 ζωός, -ή, , -όν: alive, living, 1
 Λάρισα, ἦ: Larissa, 1
 λοιπός, ό: remaining, the rest, 7
 Μῆδος, ό: Mede, Median, 5
 οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 5

ὀκτω-καί-δεκα: eighteen, 1
 ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 2
 παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old, aged, ancient, 1
 πεζός, ἦ, όν: on foot, 7
 πέντε: five, 2
 πούς, ποδός, ό: a foot, 4
 πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 5
 τεῖχος, -εος τό: wall, city-wall, 4
 Τίγρις, Τίγρητος, ό: Tigris river, 2
 ὕψος, -ου, τό: height, 5
 φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful, terrifying, 1
 χαράδρα, ἦ: mountain stream bed, ravine, 4

10 τοῖς βαρβάροις: *for...*; dat. of interest or possession
 τε...καί: *both...and*; joins the two verbs
 ἀπέθανον: aor. ἀποθνήσκω
 11 ἐλήφθησαν: 3p aor. pass. λαμβάνω
 εἰς: *up to*; 'nearly'
 12 τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας: *those...*; aor. pple, already dead
 ἠκίσαντο: 3p aor. mid.
 ὡς...εἴη: *so that...might...*; purpose with opt. subj. εἰμί
 13 ὅτι φοβερῶτατον: just as ὡς, ὅτι + superlative means 'as...as possible'

ὄραν: α-contract inf.
 14 ἀπῆλθον: aor. ἀπ-έρχομαι
 τὸ λοιπὸν: *for...*; acc. of duration
 15 ἐπὶ: *at...*
 16 ἦν: (*it*)...; 3s impf. εἰμί
 αὐτῇ: *to it*; dat. of possession
 17 ὤκουν: 3p impf. οἰκέω
 τὸ παλαιόν: *anciently, formerly*; adverbial acc.
 τοῦ τεύχους: τοῦ τεύχε-ος : gen.
 18 αὐτῆς: i.e. of the city
 (τὸ) ὕψος (ἦν): *the height (was)...*; parallel to the previous clause

A **παρρσάγγης**, 'parasang,' (~3 miles) is a Persian unit of measurement. According to Herodotus, a soldier could march 5-6 parasangs per day (V.53), about 15-18 miles.

A **σταθμός**, 'stage' or 'station,' (~15-18 miles) is a Persian unit of measurement and may refer to (1) the place where one sleeps after a day's march or, more often in Xenophon, (2) the distance traveled in a day's march.

ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ κύκλου ἢ περιόδος δύο παρασάγγαι· ᾠκοδό-
 μητο δὲ πλίνθοις κεραμεαῖς· κρηπίς δ' ὑπὴν λιθίνη τὸ ὕψος 20
 εἴκοσι ποδῶν. 8. ταύτην βασιλεὺς Περσῶν ὅτε παρὰ Μήδων
 τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλάμβανον Πέρσαι πολιορκῶν οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ
 ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν· ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλη προκαλύψασα ἠφάνισε
 μέχρι ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω. 9. παρὰ ταύτην
 τὴν πόλιν ἦν πυραμῖς λιθίνη, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ἐνὸς πλέθρου, τὸ 25
 δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. ἐπὶ ταύτης πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων
 ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν πλησίον κωμῶν ἀποπεφευγότες. 10. ἐντεῦθεν δ'
 ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας ἕξ πρὸς τεῖχος ἔρημον

ἀ-φανίζω: to make unseen, hide, 2
 ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, seized, 4
 ἀπο-φεύγω: to flee from, escape, 1
 ἀρχή, ἡ: realm, rule, office; beginning, 2
 εἴκοσι: twenty, 5
 ἐκ-λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 1
 ἑκατόν: a hundred, 4
 ἐντεῦθεν: from here, from there, 5
 ἕξ: six, 1
 ἔρημος, -η, -ον: deserted, desolate, 3
 εὖρος, τό: breadth, width, 4
 ἥλιος, ὁ: Sun, 1
 κεραμεῖος, -έα, -έον: of clay, 1
 κρηπίς, ἡ: foundation, rim, 2
 κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 4
 λιθίνος, -η, -ον: of stone, 2
 μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 2
 Μῆδος, ὁ: Mede, Median, 5

19 τοῦ κύκλου: i.e. the wall
 ᾠκοδόμητο: plpf. pass.
 20 ὑπὴν: impf. ὑπιεμι
 τὸ ὕψος: *in...*; acc. of respect
 21 εἴκοσι ποδῶν: *of...*; gen. of measure
 ταύτην: *this (city)*
 παρὰ Μήδων: *from...*; The Persian took
 control of the city from the Medes
 22 τὴν ἀρχὴν: *rule (of the city)*
 οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ: *in no...*; dat. of manner
 23 ἐλεῖν: aor. inf. αἰρέω (ἐλ-)
 24 ἐξέλιπον: aor. ἐκλείπω
 οἱ ἄνθρωποι: i.e. the people of the city
 ἐάλω: 3s aor. ἀλίσκομαι (aor. ἐάλω)

νεφέλη, ἡ: a cloud, 1
 οἰκο-δομέω: to build, build a house, 1
 ὅτε: when, at some time, 7
 παρὰ: from, at, to the side of, in respect to, 6
 παρασάγγης, ὁ: parasang (5.7 or 5.3 km), 4
 περι-οδος, ὁ: circuit, going around, 2
 πλέθρον, τό: a plethron (=100 feet), 2
 πλησίος, -η, -ον: near, close to; neighbors, 1
 πλίνθος, ὁ: brick, 1
 πολιορκέω: to besiege, blockade, 2
 πούς, ποδός, ὁ: a foot, 4
 προ-καλύπτω: to cover over, hand over, 1
 πυραμῖς, -ίδος, ἡ: pyramid, 1
 σταθμός, ὁ: stage (~5 parasangs); weight, 4
 τεῖχος, -εος τό: wall, city-wall, 4
 τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 3
 ὑπ-εμι: to be underneath, lie underneath, 1
 ὕψος, -ου, τό: height, 5

παρὰ: *alongside..., near...*
 25 τὸ εὖρος...τὸ ὕψος: *in...in...*; acc. respect
 ἐνὸς πλέθρου: *of...*; gen. of measure
 26 δύο πλέθρων: *of...*; gen. of measure
 ἐπὶ ταύτης: *upon...*; i.e. fem. πυραμῖς
 27 ἦσαν: 3p impf. εἰμί
 πλησίον: *nearby*; adv., attributive position
 ἀποπεφευγότες: pf. pple ἀποφεύγω
 28 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.
 πορεύομαι.
 σταθμὸν ἓνα: *one day's travel*; duration
 παρασάγγας ἕξ: *for...*; acc. of extent
 τεῖχος: *walled city, stronghold*

μέγα †πρὸς τῇ πόλει† κείμενον· ὄνομα δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει 1
 Μέσπιλα· Μῆδοι δ' αὐτήν ποτε ᾠκουν· ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν κρηπίς
 λίθου ξεστοῦ κογχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν καὶ
 τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. 11 ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἐπωκοδόμητο πλίνθινον
 τείχος, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· 5
 τοῦ δὲ τείχους ἡ περίοδος ἕξ παρασάγγαι· ἐνταῦθα λέγεται
 Μήδεια γυνὴ βασιλέως καταφυγεῖν ὅτε ἀπώλλυσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν
 ὑπὸ Περσῶν Μῆδοι. 12 ταύτην δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν ὁ
 Περσῶν βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐδύνατο οὔτε χρόνῳ ἐλεῖν οὔτε βία·

ἀπ-όλλυμι: destroy, lose; *mid.* perish, 7

ἀρχή, ἡ: realm, rule, office; beginning, 2

βία, ἡ: force, violence, 1

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 4

ἑκατόν: a hundred, 4

ἕξ: six, 1

ἐπι-οικο-δομέω: build up or onto; rebuild, 1

εὖρος, τό: breadth, width, 4

κατα-φεύγω: to flee to refuge, 1

κεῖμαι: to lie, lie down 2

κογχυλιάτος, -ή, -όν: full of shells, 1

κρηπίς, ἡ: foundation, rim, 2

λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 3

Μέσπιλα, ἡ: Mespila, 1

Μήδεια, ἡ: Medeia, 1

Μῆδος, ὁ: Mede, Median, 5

ξεστός, -ή, -όν: polished; hewn, planed, 1

οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 5

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 2

ὅτε: when, at some time, 7

παρασάγγης, ὁ: parasang (5.7 or 5.3 km), 4

πεντήκοντα: fifty, 4

περί-οδος, ὁ: circuit, going around, 2

πλίνθινος, -η, -ον: (made of) brick, 1

πολιορκέω: to besiege, blockade, 2

ποτέ: ever, at some time, once, 4

πούς, ποδός, ὁ: a foot, 4

τείχος, -εος τό: wall, city-wall, 4

ὑψος, -ου, τό: height, 5

χρόνος, ὁ: time, 2

1 †πρὸς τῇ πόλει†: The obelus † indicates that the the intervening words are corrupt but the the editor is not sure how to emend it.

κείμενον: *lying (in ruins)*

ἦν: impf.. εἶμι

τῇ πόλει: dat. of possession. πόλις

2 ᾠκουν: impf. οἰκέω

3 τὸ εὖρος: *in...*; acc. respect

πεντήκοντα ποδῶν: *of...*; gen. of measure

4 τὸ ὕψος: *in...*; acc. respect

πεντήκοντα (ποδῶν): *of...*; gen. measure

ἐπὶ ταύτῃ: *upon...*

ἐπωκοδόμητο: impf. pass.

5 τὸ εὖρος...τὸ ὕψος: see note for ll. 3-4

ἑκατόν (ποδῶν): *of...*; gen. of measure

6 λέγεται: pass.; i.e. according to tradition

7 ἀπώλλυσαν: impf. active, ἀπ-όλλυμι

τὴν ἀρχὴν: *rule*

8 ὑπὸ Περσῶν: *because of..., at the hands of...*; expressing gen. of cause

9 οὔτε...οὔτε: *neither...nor...*; dat. means

ἐλεῖν: aor. inf. αἰρέω

Ζεὺς δὲ βροντῆ κατέπληξε τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας, καὶ οὕτως 10
 ἔάλω.

13. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας τέτ-
 ταρας. εἰς τοῦτον δὲ τὸν σταθμὸν Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεφάνη,
 οὓς τε αὐτὸς ἰππέας ἦλθεν ἔχων καὶ τὴν Ὀρόντα δύνα-
 μιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος καὶ οὓς Κύρος 15
 ἔχων ἀνέβη βαρβάρους καὶ οὓς ὁ βασιλέως ἀδελφὸς ἔχων
 βασιλεῖ ἐβοήθει, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν
 αὐτῷ, ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα πάμπολυ ἐφάνη. 14. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς

ἀδελφός, ὁ: a brother, 2

ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, seized, 4

ἀνα-βαίνω: to go up, climb, mount, 6

βοηθέω: to come to aid, to assist, aid (dat), 2

βροντή, ἡ: thunder, 2

δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: force (troops), strength, 5

ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 2

ἐν-οικέω: to inhabit, dwell in, 1

ἐντεῦθεν: from here, from there, 5

ἐπι-φαίνομαι: show oneself, appear, 5

Ζεὺς, ὁ: Zeus, 4

θυγάτηρ, ἡ: a daughter, 1

κατα-πλήσσω: to strike down, 1

Ὀρόντας, ὁ: Orontas, 2

παμ-πολύς, -πολλή, -πολύ: very many, 1

παρασάγγης, ὁ: parasang (5.7 or 5.3 km), 4

σταθμός, ὁ: stage (~5 parasangs); weight, 4

τέτταρες, -α: four, 2

10 κατέπληξε: aor. κατα-πλήσσω

11 ἔάλω: 3s aor. ἀλίσκομαι (aor. ἔαλων)

12 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.

πορεύομαι.

σταθμὸν ἓνα: *one day's travel*; duration

παρασάγγας τέτταρας: *for...*; extent

13 εἰς...σταθμὸν: *during...*

ἐπεφάνη: 3s aor. pass. dep. ἐπιφαίνω ,

14 οὓς τε αὐτὸς...ἔχων...ἔδωκε αὐτῷ:

having (under his command)...; 4 lines

of objects governed by ἔχων which

modifies Τισσαφέρνης

οὓς...ἰππέας ἦλθεν: *horsemen whom...*;

first object of ἔχων; aor. ἔρχομαι

Ὀρόντα: *Of Orontas*; gen.

15 τοῦ ἔχοντος: *the one having (in*

marriage)...; modifying Ὀρόντα

οὓς Κύρος ἔχων ἀνέβη βαρβάρους:

barbarians whom...; aor. ἀναβαίνω; i.e.

when he came inland to attack the King

16 οὓς...βασιλεῖ ἐβοήθει: *(those troops)*

whom...; aor. συνέρχομαι

βασιλέως, βασιλεῖ: gen. and dat. sg.

17 πρὸς τούτοις: *in addition to...*

ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ: *as many*

(troops) as...; aor. δίδωμι

18 ἐφάνη: 3s aor. pass. dep. φαίνω, 'appear'

26 συνελθοῦσι: *translation*; aor. συνέρχομαι

ἐγένετο, τὰς μὲν τῶν τάξεων ὄπισθεν καταστήσας, τὰς δὲ εἰς τὰ πλάγια παραγαγὼν ἐμβαλεῖν μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν 20 οὐδ' ἐβούλετο διακινδυνεύειν, σφενδονᾶν δὲ παρήγγειλε καὶ τοξέειν. 15. ἐπεὶ δὲ διαταχθέντες οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνησαν καὶ οἱ [Σκύθαι] τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν ἀνδρός (οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάνυ προθυμεῖτο ῥάδιον ἦν), καὶ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν ἀπεχώρει καὶ <αἱ> 25 ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν. 16. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν

ἀμαρτάνω: miss the mark, fail, lose, 3
 ἀπο-χωρέω: go away, withdraw, 2
 βέλος, -εος, τό: missile, arrow, dart, 2
 δια-κινδυνεύω: run all risks, take all risks, 1
 δια-τάττω: to draw up, post at intervals, 1
 ἐμ-βάλλω: attack, fall upon; throw in, 3
 ἔξω: out of (+ gen.); adv. outside, 1
 καθ-ίστημι: set down; appoint, station, 5
 λοιπός, ὁ: remaining, the rest, 7
 μάλα: very (much), quite, exceedingly, 5
 ὄπισθεν: behind, rear; in the future; (gen.), 4

19 τὰς μὲν...τὰς δὲ: *some...others...*; i.e. fem. τάξεις, 'units'; Tissaphernes stations units behind and on the sides of the Greek rectangular formation
 καταστήσας: nom. aor. pple καθίστημι
 20 παραγαγὼν: nom. sg. aor. παρ-άγω
 21 σφενδονᾶν: α-contract inf.
 παρήγγειλε: aor. παρ-αγγέλλω; i.e. Tissaphernes had his officers command the troops
 22 διαταχθέντες: aor. pass. pple
 οἱ Ῥόδιοι...οἱ τοξόται: i.e. on the Greek side
 23 [Σκύθαι]: the editor employs brackets to indicate that the intervening word must be

πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 4
 παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 4
 παρ-άγω: to lead alongside, 1
 πλάγιον, τό: side, flank, 1
 προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 2
 ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 2
 Ῥόδιος, -α, -ον: Rhodian, of Rhodes, 5
 Σκύθης, -ου, ὁ, ἡ: Scythian, of Scythia, 1
 τολμάω: to dare, venture, undertake, 5
 τοξότης, ὁ: an archer, Bowman, 5

omitted.
 24 ἀνδρός: *his man*; i.e. his target; partitive gen. and obj. of verb
 : *for even...*
 26 οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάνυ προθυμεῖτο ῥάδιον ἦν: *for even if he was quite eager (to miss), it was not easy (to miss)*; simple past condition (εἰ impf., impf.) εἰμί where one expects contrary to fact; the enemy was in such close formation that the Greek side could not miss
 25 ἔξω βελῶν: i.e. outside their reach
 26 τὸ λοιπὸν: *for...*; acc. of duration
 οἱ μὲν: *one army...*; 'these'

ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο οἱ βάρβαροι 1
 τῇ τότε ἀκροβολίσει· μακρότερον γὰρ οἷ τε Ῥόδιοι τῶν
 Περσῶν ἐσφενδόνων καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν· 17. μεγάλα δὲ καὶ τόξα
 τὰ Περσικά ἐστίν· ὥστε χρήσιμα ἦν ὅποσα ἀλίσκοιτο τῶν
 τοξευμάτων τοῖς Κρησί, καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τῶν 5
 πολεμίων τοξεύμασι, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω ἰέντες
 μακράν. ἠύρισκετο δὲ καὶ νεῦρα πολλὰ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις
 καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς σφενδόνας. 18. καὶ ταύτη
 μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνας κώμαις

ἀκρο-βόλις, -εως, ἦ: a skirmishing, 2

ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, seized, 4

ἄνω: up, above, 2

δια-τελέω: continue, 1

εὔρισκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 3

ἴημι: send, let go, release; *mid.* hasten, 2

κατα-στρατοπεδεύω: to encamp, 1

Κρής, Κρητός, ὄ: a Cretan, 3

μακρός, ἄ, ὄν: long, far, distant, large, 3

μελετάω: to practice, care for, tend to, 1

μόλυβδος, ὄ: lead (metal), 1

νεῦρον, τό: sinew; gut, cord, , 1

ὅπόσος, -α, -ον: as much, many, great as, 6

οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 3

Περσικός, -ή, -όν: Persian, 3

Ῥόδιος, -α, -ον: Rhodian, of Rhodes, 5

σίνομαι: to harm, injure, harass, 1

σφενδόνη, ἦ: sling, stone (from a sling), 4

τόξευμα, -ατος, τό: arrow, 3

τόξον, τό: bow, 2

τοξότης, ὄ: an archer, Bowman, 5

τότε: then, at that time, 6

χρήσιμος, -η, -ον: good, useful, serviceable, 1

1 οἱ δὲ: *the other army...*; 'those'
 ἐπορεύοντο: *kept...*; iterative impf
 εἶποντο: *kept...*; iterative impf. ἔπομαι
 ἐσίνοντο: impf. σίνομαι

2 τῇ ἀκροβολίσει: dat. means
 μακρότερον: comparative adv. 'far'
 τῶν Περσῶν...τοξοτῶν: gen. of
 comparison; one object (omit the καί)

3 καί†: The obelus † indicates that the
 word it follows is corrupt but the editor is
 not sure how to emend it.

ἐσφενδόνων: ἐσφενδόναον, 3p. impf.

καί: *also*

τόξα τὰ Περσικά: *the Persian bows*;
 Περσικά is in the attributive position; neut.
 pl. with 3s verb

4 ἦν: 3s impf.. εἰμί with neut. pl. subject
 ὅποσα ἀλίσκοιτο: *however many...*;
 general relative clause with opt. in

secondary seq.

τῶν τοξευμάτων: partitive gen. with
 acc. ὅποσα

5 τοῖς Κρησί: *for...*; dat. pl. of interest with
 χρήσιμα ἦν.

διετέλουν: διετέλεον, 3p impf.; i.e. the
 Cretans

χρώμενοι: ppl + dat. obj. ἐκλείπω

6 ἐμελέτων: ἐμελέταον, 3p impf..

ἰέντες: pres. ppl. ἴημι

7 μακράν (ὀδόν): *far*; 'long way,' adv. acc.
 (acc. of extent)

νεῦρα: i.e. for bowstring

8 ὥστε: *so as to...*; + inf., result clause

εἰς...: *for...*; expressing purpose; i.e. the
 bullets shot from a sling

ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ: *on...*; dat. of time when

9 κώμαις: *upon...*; dat. of compound verb

ἐπιτυχόντες, ἀπήλθον οἱ βάρβαροι μείον ἔχοντες τῇ ἀκρο- 10
 βολίσει· τὴν δ' ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ἔμειναν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ
 ἐπεισιτίσαντο· ἦν γὰρ πολὺς σίτος ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. τῇ δὲ
 ὑστεραία ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνης εἶπετο
 ἀκροβολιζόμενος. 19. ἔνθα δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν πλαίσιον
 ἰσόπλευρον ὅτι πονηρὰ τάξις εἶη πολεμίων ἐπομένων. ἀνάγκη 15
 γὰρ ἔστιν, ἦν συγκύπτῃ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ πλαισίου ἢ ὁδοῦ
 στενοτέρας οὔσης ἢ ὁρέων ἀναγκαζόντων ἢ γεφύρας, ἐκθλί-
 βεσθαι τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονήρως ἅμα μὲν

ἀκρο-βολίζομαι: skirmish, throw from afar 2
 ἀκρο-βόλις, -εως, ἦ: a skirmishing, 2
 ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 4
 ἀνάγκη, ἦ: necessity, force, 5
 γέφυρα, ἦ: bridge, 3
 ἐκ-θλίβω: to squeeze out, crowd, cramp, 1
 ἔνθα: here, there, where, 6
 ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come to, approach, 2
 ἐπι-σιτίζομαι: furnish oneself with food, 1
 ἐπι-τυγχάνω: to chance upon, encounter, 1

ἰσό-πλευρος, -ον: with equal sides, 1
 κέρασ, -ατος, τό: horn, wing (of an army), 6
 μείων, μείον: smaller, less, of lesser value, 4
 ὀπλίτης, -ου ὁ: hoplite, armed soldier, 5
 πονηρός, -ά, -όν: wicked, base, cowardly, 3
 σίτος, ὁ: grain, bread, food, 3
 στενός, -ή, -όν: narrow, 2
 συγκύπτω: draw or bend together, 2
 ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον: the next day; later, 4

10 ἐπιτυχόντες: aor. pple
 ἀπήλθον: 3p aor. ἀπέρχομαι
 μείον: comparative adv.
 τῇ ἀκροβολίσει: *in...*
 11 τὴν δ' ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν: *for...*; duration;
 with pres. pple ἐπ-έρχομαι
 ἔμειναν: 3p aor. μένω
 12 ἐπεισιτίσαντο: aor. mid. is often reflexive
 in sense
 ἦν: 3s impf. εἰμί
 τῇ ὑστεραία (ἡμέρᾳ): *on...*; dat. of time
 when
 13 εἶπετο: impf. ἔπομαι
 14 ἔγνωσαν: aor. γινώσκω
 πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον ὅτι...εἶη: *that...*;
 proleptic use of πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον,

which should be translated as subject of the
 ind. disc.; opt. εἰμί in secondary seq.
 πονηρὰ τάξις is the predicate
 15 πολεμίων ἐπομένων: (*while*)...; gen. abs.
 ἀνάγκη...ἔστιν, ἦν συγκύπτῃ: *if ever...*;
 a present general condition (ἐάν+ subj.,
 pres.); 3s pres. subj. with neut. pl. subject
 16 τὰ κέρατα τοῦ πλαισίου: i.e. the sides
 ἢ...ἢ...ἢ: *either (because)...or (because)*
 ...*or (because)*...; three gen. absolutes that
 are causal in sense; gen. sg. pple εἰμί
 17 γεφύρας (ἀναγκαζούσης): third gen. abs.
 ἐκθλίβεσθαι τοὺς ὀπλίτας: *that...*; mid.
 inf. with acc. subj.
 18 ἅμα...ἅμα: *both...and at the same time*

πιεζομένους, ἄμα δὲ καὶ ταραττομένους, ὥστε δυσχρήστους
 εἶναι [ἀνάγκη] ἀτάκτους ὄντας· 20. ὅταν δ' αὖ διάσχη τὰ 20
 κέρατα, ἀνάγκη διασπᾶσθαι τοὺς τότε ἐκθλιβομένους καὶ
 κενὸν γίγνεσθαι τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων, καὶ ἀθυμεῖν τοὺς
 ταῦτα πάσχοντας πολεμίων ἐπομένων. καὶ ὁπότε δέοι γέ-
 φυραν διαβαίνειν ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ διάβασιν, ἔσπενδεν ἕκαστος
 βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος· καὶ εὐεπίθετον ἦν ἐνταῦθα τοῖς 25
 πολεμίοις. 21 ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατηγοί, ἐποίησαν

ἀ-θυμέω: be disheartened, lose heart, 3
 ἄ-τακτος, -ον: not in battle-order, 1
 ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, 5
 αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 5
 γέφυρα, ἡ: bridge, 3
 δι-έχω: to keep apart, separate, 3
 διά-βασις, -εως, ἡ: a (means of) crossing, 3
 δια-σπάω: to tear asunder, separate, 1
 δύσ-χρηστος, -ον: useless, unmanageable, 1
 ἐκ-θλίβω: to squeeze out, crowd, cramp, 1

ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 6
 εὐ-επίθετος, -ον: easy to set upon or attack, 1
 κενός, -ή, -όν: empty, 1
 κέρας, -ατος, τό: horn, wing (of an army), 6
 ὅταν: ὅτε ἄν, whenever, 3
 πιέζομαι: to press, oppress; hold fast, 3
 σπεύδω: to be eager, be urgent, 2
 ταραττώ: to trouble, set into confusion, 2
 τότε: then, at that time, 6
 φθάνω: be the first to, act first, anticipate, 2

19 ἄμα...ἄμα: both...and at the same time
 καὶ: also
 ὥστε...εἶναι: so as to...; result clause, εἰμί
 20 [ἀνάγκη]: brackets indicate text that the
 editor believes spurious and should be
 omitted
 ἀτάκτους ὄντας: by...; causal pple
 ὅταν δ' αὖ διάσχη: whenever...; present
 general temporal clause with 3s aor. subj.
 21 ἀνάγκη (ἐστίν):

τοὺς ἐκθλιβομένους: acc. subject
 κενὸν γίγνεσθαι τὸ μέσον...: that the
 space in the middle...
 23 πολεμίων ἐπομένων: (while)...; gen. abs.
 ὁπότε δέοι: whenever it was...; past
 general temporal clause with subj. δεῖ
 25 φθάσαι: aor. inf.
 εὐεπίθετον ἦν: it was...; impersonal
 τοῖς πολεμίοις: dat. of interest
 26 ἔγνωσαν: aor. γινώσκω

ἐξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐπέστησαν καὶ 1
 ἄλλους πεντηκοντῆρας καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχους. οὗτοι δὲ
 πορευόμενοι, ὁπότε μὲν συγκύπτοι τὰ κέρατα, ὑπέμενον
 ὕστεροι [οἱ λοχαγοί], ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς κέρασι, τότε
 δὲ παρήγον ἐξωθεν τῶν κεράτων. 22. ὁπότε δὲ διάσχοιεν αἱ 5
 πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου, τὸ μέσον ἂν ἐξεπίμπλασαν, εἰ μὲν
 στενότερον εἴη τὸ διέχον, κατὰ λόχους, εἰ δὲ πλατύτερον,
 κατὰ πεντηκοστῆς, εἰ δὲ πάνυ πλατύ, κατ' ἐνωμοτίας· ὥστε
 αἰ ἐκπλεων εἶναι τὸ μέσον. 23. εἰ δὲ καὶ διαβαίνειν τινὰ δέοι

ἀεί: always, forever, in every case, 3

ἀνά: up, upon, up to, 2

δι-έχω: to keep apart, separate, 3

ἐκ-πίμπλημι: to fill up, fill out, 1

ἐκπλεως, -ων: quite full, 1

ἑκατόν: a hundred, 4

ἐνοχλέω: to trouble, annoy (dat.) 1

ἐνωμοτ-άρχης, -ου, ὄ: squadron-leader, 1

ἐνωμοτία, ἡ: squadron, 1

ἕξ: six, 1

ἐξω-θεν: outside of (gen.), 1

ἐφ-ίστημι: set upon, place upon, 2

κέρας, -ατος, τό: horn, wing (of an army), 6

λόχος, ὄ: company (~100 men), unit, 2

πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 4

παρ-άγω: to lead out of the way, 1

πεντηκοντήρ, -ῆρος, ὄ: commander of 50, 1

πεντηκοστῆς, ὄς, ἡ: unit of 50, platoon, 1

πλατύς -εῖα, -ύ: broad, wide, 2

πλευρά, ἡ: a rib, side, 4

στενός, -ή, -όν: narrow, 2

συγ-κύπτω: draw or bend together, 2

τότε: then, at that time, 6

ὑπο-μένω: to stay back or behind, 1

ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; behind, 2

1 ἀνὰ: *up to...*; 'nearly'

ἐπέστησαν: aor.

3 ὁπότε μὲν συγκύπτοι: *whenever...*; past general temporal clause, 3s opt.

ὑπέμενον: *they would...*; customary impf. ὑπομένω.

4 ὕστεροι: *behind*; adj. as an adv., i.e. behind the rectangle formation

ὥστε μὴ...: *so as not...*; result clause

5 παρήγον: would lead out of the way (

ὁπότε δὲ διάσχοιεν: *whenever...*; past

general temporal clause, 3s aor. opt. δι-έχω

6 τὸ μέσον: *the space between*

ἂν ἐξεπίμπλασαν: *they would...*; iterative aor. (ἄν+ aor. indicative).

εἰ...εἴη: *if...should...*; opt. εἰμί

7 τὸ διέχον: the space...; neut. pres. pple; identical to the τὸ μέσον

κατὰ λόχους: *by...*; or 'company by company' distribute use of κατὰ

8 κατὰ πεντηκοστῆς: see above, acc. pl.

κατ' ἐνωμοτίας: see above, acc. pl.

ὥστε...: *so as to...*; result clause

9 εἰ...δέοι,...οὐκ ἐταράττοντο: *if it was...*; past general condition (εἰ opt., impf.)

διάβασιν ἢ γέφυραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ μέρει οἱ 10
 λοχαγοὶ διέβαινον· καὶ εἶ που δέοι τι τῆς φάλαγγος, ἐπι-
 παρήσαν οὗτοι. τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς
 τέτταρας. 24. ἡνίκα δὲ τὸν πέμπτον ἐπορεύοντο, εἶδον βασι-
 λειὸν τι καὶ περὶ αὐτὸ κώμας πολλάς, τὴν δὲ ὁδὸν πρὸς τὸ 15
 χωρίον τοῦτο διὰ γηλόφων ὑψηλῶν γιγνομένην, οἱ καθήκον
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν ἡ κώμη. καὶ εἶδον μὲν τοὺς λόφους
 ἄσμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὡς εἰκὸς τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων ἰππέων·
 25. ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον

ἀνα-βαίνω: to go up, climb, mount, 6

ἄσμενος, -η, -ον: well-pleased, glad, 1

βασιλείον, τό: palace, 1

γέφυρα, ἡ: bridge, 3

γηλόφος, ὁ: mound, hill, 5

διά-βασις, -εως, ἡ: a (means of) crossing, 3

εἰκός, ὅτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable, 5

ἐπι-παρ-έρχομαι: come alongside (to), 2

ἡνίκα: at which time, when, since, 6

καθ-ήκω: to come down, 1

λόφος, ὁ: crest of a hill, ridge, 5

μέρος, -έος, τό: a part, share, portion, 1

πέμπτος, -η, -ον: fifth, 1

που: anywhere, somewhere; I suppose, 3

σταθμός, ὁ: stage (~5 parasangs); weight, 4

ταράττω: to trouble, set into confusion, 2

τέτταρες, -α: four, 2

τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 3

ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised, 2

φάλαξ, φάλαγγος, ὁ: phalanx, 2

χωρίον, τό: space, distance; place, spot, 4

10 ἐταράττοντο: *would...*; customary impf. pass.

ἐν τῷ μέρει: *in turn, in succession*

11 εἶ...δέοι τι,... ἐπιπαρήσαν: *if it was at all a need...*; past general condition (εἰ opt., impf.); τι is an adverbial acc. (inner acc. 'some need') often translated 'at all' or 'somewhat'

που...τῆς φάλαγγος: partitive with που

ἐπιπαρήσαν: *would...*; customary impf. pass.

12 τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ: *in...*; dat. of manner
 ἐπορεύθησαν: 3p aor. pass. dep.
 πορεύομαι.

σταθμοὺς τέτταρας: *for...*; acc. duration

13 τὸν πέμπτον (σταθμὸν): *for...*; duration

εἶδον: aor. ὄρω

15 γιγνομένην: modifies τὴν ὁδὸν

οἱ: *who...*; relative clause; the γηλόφων are the antecedent

16 ὑφ' ᾧ: ὑπὸ ᾧ..., relative clause

17 ἄσμενοι: translate nom. adj. predicatively as an adv.

ὡς εἰκός: *as (it was)...*; parenthetical

τῶν πολεμίων...ἰππέων: abl. abs. εἰμί

18 ἀνέβησαν: aor. ἀναβαίνω
 ἐπὶ: *onto..., upon...*; acc. place to which.

γῆλοφον <καὶ> κατέβαινον, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον ἀναβαίνειν, ἐνταῦθα ἐπιγίγνονται οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ εἰς τὸ 20
 πρηνὲς ἔβαλλον, ἐσφενδόνων, ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων, 26. καὶ
 πολλοὺς ἐτίτρωσκον καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων γυμνήτων
 καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω τῶν ὄπλων· ὥστε παντάπασι
 ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἄχρηστοι ἦσαν ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ ὄντες καὶ οἱ
 σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ τοξόται. 27. ἐπεὶ δὲ πιεζόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες 25
 ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν, σχολῆ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀφικνουῦνται

ἄ-χρηστος, -ον: useless, unprofitable, 1
 ἄκρος, -η, -ον: topmost, excellent, 6
 ἀνα-βαίνω: to go up, climb, mount, 6
 ἀφ-ικνέομαι: to come, arrive, 7
 βάλλω: to throw, cast; shoot, 3
 γῆλοφος, ὄ: mound, hill, 5
 γυμνήτης, -ου, ὄ: light-armed soldier 1
 εἴσω: inwards, inside, 2
 ἐπι-γίγνομαι: to come to, pass, 1
 ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 3
 ἕτερος, -α, -ον: one of two, other, different, 1
 κατα-βαίνω: to step, come down, 5

κατα-κλείω: to close in, shut in, 2
 κρατέω: to be strong; conquer, prevail, 6
 μαστιγῶω: to fight under the lash, 1
 ὄχλος, ὄ: a crowd, throng, mob, 4
 παντά-πασι: all in all, altogether, entirely, 3
 πιέζομαι: to press, oppress; hold fast, 3
 πρηνής, -ές: headlong, face downwards, 1
 σφενδονήτης, -ου, ὄ: slinger, 6
 σχολή, ἡ: spare time, leisure, rest, 1
 τιτρώσκω: to wound, injure, damage, 6
 τοξότης, ὄ: an archer, Bowman, 5
 ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised, 2

26 συνελθοῦσι: translation; . aor. συνέρχομαι
 26 συνελθοῦσι: translation; . aor. συνέρχομαι

26 συνελθοῦσι: translation; . aor. συνέρχομαι
 26 συνελθοῦσι: translation; . aor. συνέρχομαι

ὀπλίται ὄντες, οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. 28. πάλιν δὲ 1
ὅποτε ἀπίοιεν πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα ταῦτὰ ἔπασχον, καὶ
ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου ταῦτὰ ἐγίγνετο, ὥστε ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου
γηλόφου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κινεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας πρὶν ἀπὸ
τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς πρὸς 5
τὸ ὄρος. 29. ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπομένων πολε-
μίων, οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο οἱ πολέμοι τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδοι-
κότες μὴ ἀποτμηθείσαν καὶ ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτῶν γένοιτο οἱ
πολέμοι. 30. οὕτω τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας πορευόμενοι, οἱ μὲν

ἀμφοτέρω-θεν: from both sides, 2
ἀν-άγω: to lead up, 1
ἀπο-πηδάω: leap away, spring off, 1
ἀπο-τέμνω: to cut off, sever, 2
γήλοφος, ὄ: mound, hill, 5
δεῖδω: to fear, 4
δεξιός, -ά, -όν: right (side); pledge, 2
δεύτερος, -η, -ον: second, 1
ἐπι-τίθημι: set upon, attack; put upon; add, 4
κινέω: to set in motion, move, 1

λοιπός, ὄ: remaining, the rest, 7
ὀπλίτης, -ου ὄ: hoplite, armed soldier, 5
οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 3
πελταστής, ὄ: light-shield troop, peltast, 7
πλευρά, ἡ: a rib, side, 4
πρὶν: until, before, 3
τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third, 2
ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over,
beyond (acc.), 5

- 1 ταχὺ: adv. ταχύς
ἀπεπήδων: i.e. flee away
2 ὅποτε ἀπίοιεν: *whenever...*; past general
temporal clause, 3s opt. ἀπ-έρχομαι
ταῦτὰ: τὰ αὐτὰ; αὐτός in the attributive
position means 'same'
ἔπασχον: would...; customary impf..
3 ἐπὶ: *on...*, *upon...*
ταῦτὰ: see above
4 πρὶν...ἀνήγαγον: the plan is to outflank
the enemy with the peltasts; 3p aor.
5 πρὸς τὸ ὄρος: i.e. the higher hill from
which the γήλοφος were formed
6 ἐπομένων: mid. pple ἔπομαι
7 τοῖς καταβαίνουσι: (*upon*) *those...*; dat.
of compound verb; pres. pple
δεδοικότες: pf. act. pple δεῖδω; the pf.
denotes a state rather than an activity:
'being X' or 'Xing,' but not 'having Xed'
8 μὴ ἀποτμηθείσαν...γένονται: *lest...*;
'that,' fearing clause with 3p aor. pass. opt.
and aor. mid. in secondary seq.
οἱ πολέμοι: i.e. the Greeks, the fearing
clause is viewed from the enemy's
perspective
9 τὸ λοιπὸν: *for...*; acc. of duration
οἱ μὲν...οἱ δὲ: *some (troops)...* *the other*
(*troops*)...; the main army and the peltasts
that were sent to outflank the enemy are
now proceeding along in parallel

<έν> τῇ ὀδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ὄρος ἐπι- 10
 παριόντες, ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας· καὶ ἰατροὺς κατέστησαν
 ὀκτώ· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ τετρωμένοι. 31 ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
 ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ τῶν τετρωμένων ἕνεκα καὶ ἅμα ἐπιτήδεια
 πολλὰ εἶχον, ἄλευρα, οἶνον, κριθὰς ἵπποις συμβεβλημένας 15
 πολλὰς. ταῦτα δὲ συνενηγεμένα ἦν τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς
 χώρας. 32. τετάρτη δ' ἡμέρα καταβαίνουσιν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ κατέλαβεν αὐτοὺς Τισσαφέρηνς σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἐδίδαξεν
 αὐτοὺς ἢ ἀνάγκη κατασκηνηῆσαι οὐδ' πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην καὶ

ἄλευρον, τό: flour, wheaten flour, 1
 ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, 5
 ἀφ-ικνέομαι: to come, arrive, 7
 γήλοφος, ὁ: mound, hill, 5
 διδάσκω: to teach, instruct, tell, 3
 δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: force (troops), strength, 5
 ἕνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen.), 5
 ἐπι-παρ-έρχομαι: come alongside (to), 2
 ἰατρός, ὁ: physician, doctor, 1
 καθ-ίστημι: set down; appoint, station, 5
 κατα-βαίνω: to step, come down, 5

κατα-σκηνάω: to encamp, 2
 κριθή, ἡ: barley-grain, barley, 1
 οἶνος, ὁ: wine, 1
 ὀκτώ: eight, 2
 οὗ: where, 1
 σατραπεύω: be a satrap, act as satrap, 1
 συμ-βάλλω: join/throw together, gather, 1
 συμ-φέρω: be advantageous/useful; gather 2
 τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth, 2
 τιτρώσκω: to wound, injure, damage, 6
 τρεῖς, τρία: three, 1

10 <έν>: diamond brackets indicate text not
 in the manuscript tradition but supplied by
 the editor; the prepositional phrase is in the
 attributive position modifying οἱ μὲν
 κατὰ: *along...*;
 ἐπιπαριόντες: the peltasts are proceeding
 parallel to the main army
 11 εἰς: *at...*
 κατέστησαν: aor. καθίστημι
 12 ἦσαν: impf. εἰμί
 οἱ τετρωμένοι... τῶν τετρωμένων:
(those)...; pf. pass. pple τιτρώσκω
 ἔμειναν: aor. μένω
 13 ἡμέρας τρεῖς: acc. duration
 ἕνεκα: governs the preceding gen.

14 εἶχον: the villages are the subject
 ἵπποις: *for...*; dat. of interest
 συμβεβλημένας: pf. pass. pple
 15 συνενηγεμένα: pf. pass. pple συμφέρω
 (aor. ἤνεγκα)
 ἦν: impf. εἰμί with neut. pl. subject
 τῷ σατραπεύοντι: *for (the one)...*; dat.
 of interest, pres. pple or possible a dat. of
 agent ('by...') with the pf. pass. pple
 16 τετάρτη δ' ἡμέρα: dat. of time when
 17 αὐτοὺς: i.e. the Greeks
 18 κατασκηνηῆσαι: aor. act. inf.
 οὗ: *where...*; relative adv.
 εἶδον: 3p aor. ὄραω

μη πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ ἀπό-
 μαχοι, <οἱ τε> τετραμένοι καὶ οἱ ἐκείνους φέροντες καὶ οἱ 20
 τῶν φερόντων τὰ ὄπλα δεξάμενοι. 33. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεσκήνησαν
 καὶ ἐπεχείρησαν αὐτοῖς ἀκροβολίζεσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι πρὸς τὴν
 κώμην προσιόντες, πολὺ περιῆσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· πολὺ γὰρ
 διέφερον ἐκ χώρας ὀρμώντας ἀλέξασθαι ἢ πορευομένους
 ἐπιούσι τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι. 34. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἤδη δείλη, 25
 ὥρα ἦν ἀπιέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις· οὐποτε γὰρ μείον ἀπεστρα-
 τοπεδεύοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἐξήκοντα σταδίων,
 φοβούμενοι μὴ τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιθῶνται αὐτοῖς.

ἀκρο-βολίζομαι: skirmish, throw from afar 2
 ἀλέξομαι: to ward off, turn aside, 1
 ἀπό-μαχος, -ον: unfit to fight, 1
 ἀπο-στρατοπεδεύω: to move camp away, 1
 δείλη, ἡ: afternoon, 3
 δέχομαι: to receive, accept, 4
 δια-φέρω: to carry over; differ, disagree, 2
 Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Greek, Hellenic, 2
 ἐξήκοντα: sixty, 2
 ἐπι-έρχομαι: to come to, approach, 2
 ἐπι-τίθημι: set upon, attack; put upon; add, 4
 ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 3
 ἡνίκα: at which time, when, since, 6

κατα-σκηνάω: to encamp, 2
 μάχομαι: to fight, contend, quarrel, dispute 7
 μείων, μείον: smaller, less, of lesser value, 4
 ὀρμάω: to set in motion, set out, begin, 4
 οὐ-ποτε: never, 3
 περί-ειμι, ὄ: be superior or better, surpass, 1
 προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 6
 στάδιον, τό: stade (600 ft., 1/8 of a mile), 6
 τιτρώσκω: to wound, injure, damage, 6
 φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, convey, 7
 φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 7
 ὥρα, ἡ: season, time, period of time, 4

19 **μη πορεύεσθαι**: *and not...*; ind. command, as a wish, employs μη instead of οὐ
ἔτι μαχομένους: (*while*)...; pres. pple.
 20 **<οἱ τε>...καὶ...καὶ**: *both those...and... and*; diamond brackets indicate text not in the manuscript tradition but supplied by the editor; in apposition to πολλοὶ
τετραμένοι: pf. pass. pple τιτρώσκω
ἐκείνους: i.e. the οἱ τετραμένοι
οἱ... δεξάμενοι: *those...*; aor. pple δέχομαι
 21 **τῶν φερόντων**: *of those...*; pple, gen. possession modifying τὰ ὄπλα
 22 **ἀκροβολίζεσθαι**: i.e. to make an attack and throw (βάλλω) from afar (ἄκρος)
 23 **προσιόντες**: pres. pple προσέρχομαι
πολὺ: *much*; or 'by fa,' adv. acc. (acc. of extent of degree): 'better by much'
περιῆσαν: 3p impf.
 24 **διέφερον**: *it was far different*; impersonal;

for πολὺ see above
ἐκ χώρας: *from a (defensive) position*; i.e. the Greeks encamped as opposed to the Greeks marching, πορευομένους
ὀρμώντας: pple modifying the Greeks, the understood acc. subject of the inf.
ἢ: *than*
πορευομένους: (*while*)...; pple modifying the Greeks, the acc. subject of μάχεσθαι
 25 **ἐπιούσι τοῖς πολεμίοις**: *with...*; dat. of association with dat. pple. ἐπέρχομαι
 26 **ὥρα ἦν**: *it was...*; impersonal
ἀπιέναι: inf. ἀπέρχομαι
τοῖς πολεμίοις: *for...*; dat. interest
 26 **μείον**: *for less (distance)*; acc. duration
τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ: *from the Greek (camp)*
 27 **ἐξήκοντα σταδίων**: gen. comparison
 28 **μη...ἐπιθῶνται**: *lest...*; fearing, aor. subj.
τῆς νυκτὸς: *during...*; gen. time within

35. *πονηρὸν γὰρ νυκτὸς ἔστι στράτευμα Περσικόν. οἳ τε γὰρ* 1
ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδενται καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺν πεποδισμένοι εἰσὶ
τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν ἔνεκα εἰ λυθείησαν, ἔάν τέ τις θόρυβος
γίγνηται, δεῖ ἐπισάξαι τὸν ἵππον Πέρσῃ ἀνδρὶ καὶ χαλινῶσαι,
δεῖ καὶ θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. ταῦτα δὲ 5
πάντα χαλεπὰ νύκτωρ καὶ θορύβου ὄντος. τούτου ἔνεκα
πόρρω ἀπεσκήνουν τῶν Ἑλλήνων. 36. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίγνωσκον
αὐτοὺς οἱ Ἕλληνες βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ διαγγελλο-
μένους, ἐκήρυξε τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι ἀκουόντων τῶν

ἀνα-βαίνω: to go up, climb, mount, 6

ἀπο-σκηνώ: to encamp away from, 1

δέω: to bind, tie, 2

δι-αγγέλλω: to send message along, 1

ἔάν: εἰ ἂν, if (+ subj.), 3

ἔνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen.), 5

ἐπι-σάττω: to pile a load upon, saddle, 1

θόρυβος, ὄ: din, noise, uproar, 2

θωρακίζω: to put on a breastplate, 1

κηρύσσω: to proclaim, make public, 1

λύω: to loosen, break, free; *mid.* ransom, 5

νύκτωρ: at night, 1

Περσικός, -ή, -όν: Persian, 3

ποδιζω: to hobble, bind the feet, 1

πονηρός, -ά, -όν: wicked, base, cowardly, 3

πόρρω: forward(s); henceforth, 1

συσκευάζομαι: pack up, prepare, 2

χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 4

χαλινῶω, ἤ: to bridle, place a bit in a horse, 1

1 *πονηρὸν*: *useless, worthless*

νυκτὸς: *during...*; gen. of time within

2 *αὐτοῖς*: *by...*; dat. of agent; i.e. Persians

δέδενται: pf. pass. δέω pass

ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺν: *so as for the most part*;
i.e. generally

πεποδισμένοι: pf. pass. pple

εἰσὶ: 3p pres. εἰμί

3 *τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν*: articular inf. and gen. obj.
of ἔνεκα : translate as a gerund (-ing)

εἰ λυθείησαν: *if...should...*; 3p aor. pass.
opt.

ἔάν τέ τις θόρυβος γίγνηται, δεῖ: *and if
ever...*, pres. general condition (ἔάν subj.,
pres.); τε, here equiv. to καί, merely joins
the clauses that follow to what precedes

ἐπισάξαι...χαλινῶσαι: aor. inf.

4 *Πέρσῃ ἀνδρὶ*: *for...*; dat. of interest

5 *θωρακισθέντα*: *that (the Persian man)...*;
aor. pass. dep. pple modifies the missing

acc. subject; the man puts it on himself

ἀναβῆναι: aor. act. inf

6 *χαλεπὰ*: (are)...; nom. pred., add a linking
verb

καὶ θορύβου ὄντος: *and (while)...*; gen.
abs. εἰμί; καί is just a conjunction

7 *τῶν Ἑλλήνων*: *from...*; gen. separation

8 *αὐτοὺς βουλομένους...*: *that they...*; ind.

disc. with acc. and pple; i.e. the Persians

ἀπιέναι: inf. ἀπέρχομαι

διαγγελλομένους: *passing the order
along; passing word from one to another*

9 *ἐκήρυξε*: *(a herald) announced*; aor.,
supply a subject ὁ κῆρυξ

ἀκουόντων τῶν πολεμίων: gen. abs.

πολεμίων. καὶ χρόνον μὲν τινα ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας οἱ 10
 βάρβαροι, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὀψὲ ἐγίγνετο, ἀπῆσαν· οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει
 λύειν αὐτοὺς νυκτὸς πορεύεσθαι καὶ κατάγεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ
 στρατόπεδον. 37. ἐπειδὴ δὲ σαφῶς ἀπιόντας ἤδη ἐώρων οἱ Ἕλ-
 ληνες, ἐπορεύοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες καὶ διήλθον ὅσον 15
 ἑξήκοντα σταδίους. καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον μεταξύ τῶν στρα-
 τευμάτων ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμοι οὐδὲ
 τῇ τρίτῃ, τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ νυκτὸς προελθόντες καταλαμβάνουσι
 χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον οἱ βάρβαροι, ἧ ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληνες

ἀνα-ζεύγνυμι: break camp; harness again, 1

δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 3

ἑξήκοντα: sixty, 2

ἐπ-έχω: to hold off, delay, 1

κατ-άγω: to brink back; *mid.* return, 1

λύω: to loosen, break, free; *mid.* ransom, 5

μέλλω: to be about to, intend to; delay, 7

μεταξύ: between, 2

ὀψέ: late, 1

πορεία, ἦ: march, journey, way, 5

προ-έρχομαι: to go forth, advance, 2

σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct, definite, 2

στάδιον, τό: stade (600 ft., 1/8 of a mile), 6

στρατόπεδον τό: camp, encampment, 2

τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth, 2

τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: so great, so much,
so many, 7

τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third, 2

ὑπερ-δεξιός, -όν: above on the right, 1

ὑστεραῖος, -α, -ον: the next day; later, 4

χρόνος, ό: time, 2

χωρίον, τό: space, distance; place, spot, 4

10 χρόνον τινα: acc. duration

τῆς πορείας: *from...*; gen. separation

11 ἀπῆσαν: *began to...*; inchoative impf.

ἀπέρχομαι.

12 λύειν: *to profit, to pay*; λύειν here carries

the meaning of λυσιτελεῖν, 'profit'

αὐτούς...πορεύεσθαι: *that they...*; ind.

disc.

νυκτὸς: *during...*; gen. of time within

ἐπὶ: *to...*

13 ἀπιόντας: pplē ἀπέρχομαι.

ἐώρων: ἐώρασον, 3p impf. ὁράω

14 καὶ αὐτοὶ: *they themselves also*; intensive

ὅσον: *as much as*; i.e. nearly; adverbial

acc.

15 ἑξήκοντα σταδίους: *for...*; acc. of extent

τοσοῦτον: *so great (a distance)*; subject

16 τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ (ἡμέρᾳ): *on...*; dat. of time

when

ἐφάνησαν: 3p aor. pass. φαίνω

οὐδὲ: *not even*

17 τῇ τρίτῃ (ἡμέρᾳ): *on...*; dat. of time when

τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ: (ἡμέρᾳ): *but on...*; dat. of

time when

νυκτὸς: *during...*; gen. of time within

προελθόντες: aor. pplē προ-έρχομαι

18 ἧ: *where*; relative adv.

παριέναι, ἀκρωνυχίαν ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἡ κατάβασις ἦν εἰς τὸ
 πεδίον. 38. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἑώρα Χειρίσοφος προκατειλημμένην τὴν 20
 ἀκρωνυχίαν, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς οὐράς καὶ κελεύει
 λαβόντα τοὺς πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. 39. ὁ δὲ
 Ξενοφῶν τοὺς μὲν πελταστὰς οὐκ ἦγεν· ἐπιφαινόμενον γὰρ
 ἑώρα Τισσαφέρην καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν· αὐτὸς δὲ προσ-
 ελάσας ἠρώτα 'τί καλεῖς;' ὁ δὲ λέγει αὐτῷ· 'ἔξεστιν ὀρᾶν· 25
 κατελιπται γὰρ ἡμῖν ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως λόφος, καὶ οὐκ
 ἔστι παρελθεῖν, εἰ μὴ τούτους ἀποκόψομεν. 40. ἀλλὰ τί οὐκ ἦγες
 τοὺς πελταστὰς;' ὁ δὲ λέγει ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἔρημα κατα-

ἀκρ-ωνυχία, ἡ: spur, ridge; tip of a nail, 2
 ἀπο-κόπτω: to knock off, cut off, 1
 ἔξ-εστι: it is allowed, it is possible, 6
 ἐπι-φαίνομαι: show oneself, appear, 5
 ἔρημος, -η, -ον: deserted, desolate, 3
 ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 7
 ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 3
 καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 3
 κατα-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 5
 κατά-βασις, -εως, ἡ: descent, going down, 2

λόφος, ὁ: crest of a hill, ridge, 5
 οὐρά, οὐράς, ἡ: tail, rear-guard, 2
 παρα-γίνομαι: to be present, come to, 1
 παρ-έρχομαι: to go pass, enter, 4
 πελταστής, ὁ: light-shield troop, peltast, 7
 προ-κατα-λαμβάνω: to seize beforehand, 2
 προσ-ελαύνω: to drive to, ride to, 2
 ὑπὲρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over,
 beyond (acc.), 5

19 παριέναι: inf. παρ-έρχομαι
 ὄρους: ὄρε-ος, gen. sg. ὄρος
 ὑφ' ἣν: ὑπὸ ἣν..., relative; i.e. under and
 along which
 ἦν: impf. εἰμί
 20 ἑώρα: ἐώρα-ε, 3p impf. ὀράω
 προκατειλημμένην: pf. pass. pple
 22 λαβόντα: (him)...; aor. pple modifying
 Xenophon, the understood obj. of κελεύει
 τὸ πρόσθεν: the front
 23 ἦγεν: did begin to...; inchoative impf.
 ἄγω.
 24 ἑώρα: ἐώρα-ε, 3p impf. ὀράω;
 Xenophon is subject
 αὐτὸς: intensive, i.e. 'Xenophon by
 himself'
 προσελάσας: nom. sg. aor. pple; i.e. to

Cheirisophus
 25 ἠρώτα: ἠρώτα-ε, 3p impf. ἐρωτάω
 τί: why?; 'in respect to what?' common
 interrogative and acc. of respect
 25 ὁ δὲ: and he; marking a change of subject
 26 κατελιπται: pf. pass.
 ἡμῖν: dat. of interest or dat. of possession
 with τῆς καταβάσεως, i.e. 'our descent'
 27 ἔστι: it is possible; impersonal
 εἰ μὴ: unless...; 1p fut.
 τί: why?; 'in respect to what?' common
 interrogative and acc. of respect
 ἦγες: 2s impf. ἄγω.
 28 ὁ δὲ: and he; Xenophon, change of subject
 ἔρημα: predicative: i.e. to leave barren
 καταλιπεῖν: aor. inf. καταλείπω.

λιπεῖν τὰ ὄπισθεν πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων. ‘ἀλλὰ μὴν ὦρα 1
 γ,’ ἔφη, ‘βουλευέσθαι πῶς τις τοὺς ἀνδρας ἀπελᾶ ἀπὸ τοῦ
 λόφου.’ 41 ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὀρᾶ τοῦ ὄρους τὴν κορυφὴν ὑπὲρ
 αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἑαυτῶν στρατεύματος οὖσαν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον
 ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον ἔνθα ἦσαν οἱ πολέμοιοι, καὶ λέγει· ‘κράτιστον, 5
 ᾧ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἴεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· ἦν γὰρ
 τοῦτο λάβωμεν, οὐ δυνήσονται μένειν οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ.
 ἀλλὰ, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ’ ἐθέλω
 πορεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, ἐγὼ δὲ μενῶ

ἄκρος, -η, -ον: topmost, excellent, 6
 ἀπ-ελαύνω: to drive away, expel from, 2
 βουλευέω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 6
 ἔνθα: here, there, where, 6
 ἐπι-φαίνομαι: show oneself, appear, 5
 ἔφ-οδος, ἦ: an approach, an access, 1
 ἴημι: send, let go, release; *mid.* hasten, 2
 κορυφή, ἦ: summit, top, highest part of, 1
 κράτιστος, -η, -ον: strongest, mightiest, 5

λόφος, ὄ: crest of a hill, ridge, 5
 μὴν: certainly, truly, surely, 3
 ὄπισθεν: behind, rear; in the future; (gen.), 4
 πῶς: how? in what way?, 1
 ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 5
 χρήζω: to need, lack; want, ask for, 1
 ὦρα, ἦ: season, time, period of time, 4

1 τὰ ὄπισθεν: i.e. the rearguard
 πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων: gen. abs.
 ἀλλὰ μὴν: *but, certainly*; ἀλλὰ is not an adversative but introduces a further point; Cheirisophus agrees with Xenophon but makes a further point in his favor
 2 ὦρα γ(ε): (*it is*) time in fact; emphatic
 ἔφη: 3s impf. φημί
 2 ἀπελᾶ: ἀπελάει: fut. ἀπελαύνω (fut. ἐλα)
 4 αὐτοῦ: *itself*; intensive
 ἑαυτῶν: *their own*; reflexive
 οὖσαν: fem. acc. sg. pres. ppl. εἰμί
 ἀπὸ ταύτης (ὀρᾶ) ἔφοδον: Xenophon’s vision moves from the κορυφή to the ἔφοδος.
 5 ἐπὶ: upon..., onto...
 ἔνθα: where...; relative adv.
 κράτιστον: (*it is*)...; impersonal, add verb

6 ἡμῖν: dat. of interest ἐκλείπω
 ἴεσθαι: *mid. inf.* ἴημι; which in the middle means ‘send oneself’ or ‘hasten’
 ὡς τάχιστα: ὡς + superlative (here, adv.) is often translated ‘as...as possible’
 ἦν...λάβωμεν, δυνήσονται: ἦν is ἐάν; future more vivid condition (ἐάν + subj., fut.)
 7 οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ: *those...*; prepositional phrase is in the attributive position
 8 ἀλλὰ: *come (now)!*; often drawing attention before an imperative
 βούλει: βούλε(σ)αι: 2s pres. mid.
 μένε: pres. imperative
 ἐπὶ: *over...*; i.e. in charge over
 ἐθέλω: *I am willing*
 9 πορεύου: πορεύε(σ)ο: *mid. imperative*
 μενῶ: fut. μένω (fut. stem, μένε-)

αὐτοῦ. 42. ‘ἀλλὰ δίδωμί σοι,’ ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ‘ὀπότερον βούλει 10
 ἐλέσθαι.’ εἰπὼν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ὅτι νεώτερός ἐστιν αἰρεῖται
 πορεύεσθαι, κελεύει δέ οἱ συμπέμψαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος
 ἀνδρας· μακρὸν γὰρ ἦν ἀπὸ τῆς οὐράς λαβεῖν. 43. καὶ ὁ Χειρ-
 ἰσοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος πελταστάς, ἔλαβε δὲ
 τοὺς κατὰ μέσον πλαισίου. συνέπεσθαι δ’ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ 15
 καὶ τοὺς τριακοσίους οὓς αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ
 στόματι τοῦ πλαισίου. 44. ἐντεύθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς ἐδύνατο
 τάχιστα. οἱ δ’ ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου πολέμοι ὡς ἐνόησαν αὐ-

ἐντεύθεν: from here, from there, 5

ἐπι-λέκτος, -ον: chosen, 1

λόφος, ὄ: creat of a hill, ridge, 5

μακρός, ἄ, ὄν: long, far, distant, large, 3

νέος, -α, -ον: young; new, novel, strange, 2

νοέω: to notice, perceive, think, suppose, 1

ὀπότερος, -η, -ον: which (of two), 3

10 αὐτοῦ: *here*; adv., ‘in this very place’

ἀλλὰ: *well*; ἀλλὰ is not a adversative here but introduces a further point

βούλει: βούλε(σ)αι: 2s pres. mid.

11 ἐλεσθαι: aor. mid. inf.; αἰρέω (ἐλ) in the mid. voice means ‘choose’

εἰπὼν: nom. aor. pple λέγω

ὅτι: *because...*; causal, with comparative νέος.

αἰρεῖται: see note for line 11

12 κελεύει: supply Cheirisophus as object; often this verb does not mean ‘order’ but ‘bid’ or ‘urge’

οἱ: *with him*; dat. sg. 3rd pers. pronoun ἔ here dat. of compound with συμπέμψαι

συμπέμψαι: aor. inf.

τοῦ στόματος: *front (of the army)*;

‘mouth’ or ‘face’

13 μακρὸν ἦν: *it was a long (time)*; i.e. too long

οὐρά, οὐράς, ἦ: tail, rear-guard, 2

πελταστής, ὄ: light-shield troop, peltast, 7

στόμα, -ατος, τό: mouth; face, front, 3

συμ-πέμψαι: to send along with, 2

συν-έπομαι: follow along with, accompany, 2

τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α: three hundred, 1

λαβεῖν (ἀνδρας): aor. inf. λαμβάνω

14 ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος: *front (of the army)*; prepositional phrase in the attributive position with πελταστάς

15 τοὺς κατὰ μέσον πλαισίου: *those throughout...*; prepositional phrase in the attributive position

αὐτῷ: *with him*; dat. of compound adj. with συνέπεσθαι

16 καὶ: *also*

οὓς... τῶν ἐπιλέκτων: *whom...among...*; relative clause with partitive gen.

ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι: *at the front*

17 ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα: ὡς + superlative (here, adv.) often means ‘as...as possible;’ in this case, the verb is expressed

18 ἐπὶ: *upon...*; attributive position

ὡς ἐνόησαν: *when..., as...*; ὡς introduces a temporal clause; aor. νοέω

τῶν τὴν πορείαν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐθύς καὶ αὐτοὶ ὄρμησαν ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. 45. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ μὲν κραυγὴ 20 ἦν τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύματος διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, πολλὴ δὲ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην τοῖς ἑαυτῶν διακελευομένων. 46. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρελαύνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου παρεκελεύετο· ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα νομίζετε ἀμιλλᾶσθαι, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας, νῦν ὀλίγον 25 πονήσαντες ἀμαχεὶ τὴν λοιπὴν πορευσόμεθα. 47. Σωτηρίδας δὲ

ἀ-μαχεῖ: without fighting, 1

ἄκρος, -η, -ον: topmost, excellent, 6

ἀμιλλᾶσθαι: to contend, compete, strive, 2

ἀμφί: on both sides, 6

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman, wife, 4

δια-κελεύω: encourage, urge on (dat) 2

Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ: Greece, Hellas, 7

Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Greek, Hellenic, 2

εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once 7

κραυγὴ, ἡ: shouting, crying, screaming, 2

λοιπός, ὁ: remaining, the rest, 7

ὄρμάω: to set in motion, set out, begin, 4

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 2

παρ-ελαύνω: march, ride, or drive along, 2

παρα-κελεύομαι: to encourage, urge along, 2

πενέω: to work, toil, 1

πορεία, ἡ: march, journey, way, 5

στρατεύω: to wage war, campaign against, 7

Σωτηρίδας, ὁ: Soteridas (a Greek), 2

19 ἐπὶ: upon..., onto...; acc. place to which καὶ αὐτοί: they themselves also; intensive i.e. the enemy

20 ἦν: there was

21 διακελευομένων: mid. pple agreeing with the plural implied in στρατεύματος τοῖς ἑαυτῶν: their own (men); 'those of theirs,' dat. ind. obj. of pple

22 τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην: of those (men)... i.e. the enemy; prepositional phrase in the attributive position

τοῖς ἑαυτῶν: their own (men); i.e. that of the enemies, dat. ind. obj. of the pple

διακελευομένων: modifying τῶν

24 παρεκελεύετο: add 'the men' as ind. obj.

ἄνδρες: vocative, dir. address

νῦν...νῦν...νῦν: anaphora (repetition of initial words in successive clauses) for emotional effect

ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα: for...; as a destination

ἀμιλλᾶσθαι: that (you) are...; i.e. as if in a race; ind. disc.; add acc. subject

25 πρὸς: to...; acc. place to which

ὀλίγον: a little; adv. acc. (inner acc.) with the pple

26 ἀμαχεῖ: adv. with πορευσόμεθα

τὴν λοιπὴν (ὁδόν): for...; duration

ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· ‘οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμέν· σὺ μὲν 1
 γὰρ ἐφ’ ἵππου ὀχῆ, ἐγὼ δὲ χαλεπῶς κάμνω τὴν ἀσπίδα
 φέρων.’ 48. καὶ ὃς ἀκούσας ταῦτα καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου
 ὠθεῖται αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀφελόμενος ὡς
 ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἔχων ἐπορεύετο· ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ θώρακα 5
 ἔχων τὸν ἱππικόν· ὥστ’ ἐπιέζετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἔμπροσθεν
 ὑπάγειν παρεκελεύετο, τοῖς δὲ ὀπισθεν παριέναι μόλις ἐπό-
 μενος. 49. οἱ δ’ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται παίουσι καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ
 λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτηρίδαν, ἔστε ἠνάγκασαν λαβόντα τὴν

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 4
 ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ὁ: a round shield, 3
 ἀφ-αίρω: to take away from, remove, 2
 βάλλω: to throw, cast; shoot, 3
 ἐμ-προσθεν: in front, before, 1
 ἔστε: ἔσ-οτε until, up to the time that, 6
 θώραξ, θώρακος, ὁ: breastplate, corset, 2
 ἱππικός, -ή, -όν: of a horse; cavalry, 1
 κάμνω: to be tired, afflicted, suffering, 1
 κατα-πηδάω: to leap down, 1
 λοιδορέω: reproach, abuse, revile, 1
 μόλις (μόγισ): with difficulty, hardly, 1

- 1 ὁ Σικυώνιος: *the Sicyonian*; city state in the northern Peloponnesus
 ἐξ ἴσου: *on equal footing, on equal standing*; elsewhere, ‘equally’
 ἐσμέν: 1p pres. εἰμί
 2 ἐφ’ ἵππου: *upon...*;
 ὀχῆ: ὀχέε(σ)αι, 2s pres. mid. ὀχέω
 χαλεπῶς: *with difficulty*
 3 ὃς: *this one*; ‘he,’ i.e. Xenophon; used as a demonstrative rather than relative pronoun;
 4 ὠθεῖται: pres. mid.
 αὐτὸν: *him*; i.e. Soteridas; Xenophon took Soteridas’ place
 τὴν ἀσπίδα: i.e. Soteridas’
 ἀφελόμενος: aor. mid. pple ἀφ-αίρω
 ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα: ὡς + superlative (here, adv.) often means ‘as...as possible;’

ὀπισθεν: behind, rear; in the future; (gen.), 4
 ὀχέω: hold fast; mount, ride, 1
 παίω: to strike, smite, 3
 παρ-έρχομαι: to go pass, enter, 4
 παρα-κελεύομαι: to encourage, urge along, 2
 πιέζομαι: to press on, oppress; hold fast, 3
 Σικυώνιος, -, -α, -ον: Sicyonian, of Sicyon, 1
 Σωτηρίδας, ὁ: Soteridas (a Greek), 2
 ὑπ-άγω: to go forward, go up, 1
 φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, convey, 7
 χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 4
 ὠθέω to push, thrust, 1

- in this case, the verb is expressed
 5 ἐτύγχανε: *and he happened to + complementary pple*
 καί: *also*
 6 τοῖς μὲν ἔμπροσθεν... τοῖς δὲ ὀπισθεν: *those...and those...*; i.e. in the troops with Xenophon; dat. ind. obj. of main verb; Xenophon wishes to set a good example but struggles with the weight of his armor
 7 παριέναι (παρεκελεύετο): παρ-έρχομαι
 μόλις ἐπόμενος: pple. ἔπομαι;
 ἠνάγκασαν: aor. ἀναγκάζω; the response suggests to readers that the soldiers do not view Xenophon’s distress as a sign of weakness
 7 λαβόντα: (*him*)...; aor pple λαμβάνω; the pronoun is missing object of ἠνάγκασαν

ἀσπίδα πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ ἀναβάς, ἕως μὲν βάσιμα ἦν, 10
 ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγεν, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον
 ἔσπευδε πεζῇ. καὶ φθάνουσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι τοὺς
 πολεμίους.

1. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφευγον ἢ ἕκαστος 15
 ἐδύνατο, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Τισσα-
 φέρνην καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀποτραπόμενοι ἄλλην ὁδὸν ὤχοντο. οἱ
 δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον καταβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν κώμη
 μεστῇ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι κῶμαι πολλαὶ

ἄ-βατος, -ον: untrodden, impassable, 1
 ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 7
 ἄκρος, -η, -ον: topmost, excellent, 6
 ἀμφί: on both sides, 6
 ἀνα-βαίνω: to go up, climb, mount, 6
 ἀπο-τρέπω: to turn back or away, avert, 1
 Ἀριαῖος, ὁ: Ariaeus, 3
 ἀσπίς, ἀσπίδος, ὁ: a round shield, 3
 βάσιμος, -ον: passable, accessible, 2
 ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 6
 ἔνθα: here, there, where, 6

ἕως: until, as long as, 2
 κατα-βαίνω: to step, come down, 5
 κατα-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 5
 μεστός, -ή, -όν: full, filled, filled full, 1
 οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 3
 πεζός, ἢ, ὄν: on foot, 7
 σπεύδω: to be eager, be urgent, 2
 στρατοπεδεύω: to encamp, take a position, 1
 στρέφω: to turn, 1
 φθάνω: be the first to, act first, anticipate, 2

10 ὁ δὲ: *and he*; i.e. Xenophon, change of subject.

ἀναβάς: i.e. on the horse; nom. sg. aor. pple.

βάσιμα ἦν: supply τὰ χωρία, ‘places’ as subject

11 ἐπὶ: *upon*

ἦγεν: *led*; impf. ἄγω

ἄβατα ἦν: supply τὰ χωρία, ‘places’ as subject

12 πεζῇ: dat. of manner

φθάνουσιν...τοὺς πολεμίους: φθάνω governs a complementary pple and acc. object, which is hard to express in English: perhaps ‘are the first...before the enemy’

14 ἔνθα δὴ: *just then*; intensive

στραφέντες: aor. pass. dep. pple. στρέφω
 ἔφευγον: *began to...*; inchoative impf.
 ἢ (ὁδοῦ): *in which way...*; relative adv. or adj.

15 οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Τισσα-φέρνην καὶ Ἀριαῖον: *those...*; prepositional phrase is in the attributive position

16 ἀποτραπόμενοι: aor. mid. pple

ἄλλην ὁδόν: *along...*; adv. acc.

ὤχοντο: impf. οἴχομαι

οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον: *but those...*

17 καταβάντες: i.e. into the plain. πεδῖον

18 πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν: partitive; τὰ ἀγαθὰ are ‘goods’ or ‘supplies’

ἦσαν: *there were...*

πλήρεις πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν Τίγρητα
 ποταμόν. 2. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν δείλη ἑξαπίνης οἱ πολέμοι ἐπιφαί- 20
 νονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέκοψάν τινες τῶν
 ἑσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἀρπαγὴν· καὶ γὰρ νομαὶ
 πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
 κατελήφθησαν. 3. ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρνης καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ καίειν 25
 ἐπεχείρησαν τὰς κώμας. καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἠθύμησάν
 τινες, ἐννοούμενοι μὴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ καίοιεν, οὐκ ἔχοιεν
 ὀπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν. 4. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρῖσοφον ἀπήσαν

ἀ-θυμέω: be disheartened, lose heart, 3
 ἀμφί: on both sides, 6
 ἀρπαγή, ἡ: seizure, robbery, kidnapping, 1
 βόσκηματα, -ατος, τό: fed herd, cattle, 1
 δείλη, ἡ: afternoon, 3
 δια-βιβάζω: to carry over, transport, 2
 ἐν-νοέω: to be anxious; consider, reflect, 5
 ἑξαπίνης: suddenly, 2
 ἐπι-φαίνομαι: show oneself, appear, 5
 ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 3
 ἡνίκα: at which time, when, since, 6

καίω: to light up, burn, 6
 κατα-κόπτω: to cut down, know down, 1
 μάλα: very (much), quite, exceedingly, 5
 νομή, ἡ: pasture, pasturage, food, 1
 ὀποθεν: whence, from what place, 1
 παρὰ: from, at, to the side of, in respect to, 6
 πέραν: beyond, exceeding (gen), 2
 πλήρης, -ες: full, filled, 1
 σκεδάννυμι: to scatter, disperse, 1
 Τίγρις, Τίγρητος, ὄ: Tigris river, 2

19 πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν: partitive; τὰ ἀγαθὰ
 are 'goods' or 'supplies'
 21 τῶν Ἑλλήνων: among...; partitive
 22 ἑσκεδασμένων: pf. mid. pple σκεδάννυμι
 καθ' ἀρπαγὴν: after..., for the purpose
 of...
 καὶ γὰρ: and in fact
 νομαὶ πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων: many
 pastured herds; 'many pastures of herds'
 23 διαβιβαζόμεναι: (while)...; pres. passive
 pple
 τὸ πέραν: the far side; 'the beyond'
 24 κατελήφθησαν: aor. pass. καταλαμβάνω
 οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ: those...; prepositional phrase
 in the attributive position
 25 τῶν Ἑλλήνων: among...; partitive

ἠθύμησάν: began to..., came to...;
 ingressive 3p aor. act. ἀθυμέω;
 26 μὴ...οὐκ ἔχοιεν: that...would not...;
 fearing clause with 3p pres. opt. in
 secondary seq.
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια: object of λαμβάνοιεν
 26 εἰ (οἱ πολέμοι) καίοιεν
 27 ὀπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν: (a place) from
 where...; an ind. question (ὀπόθεν is used
 mainly in ind. questions) with opt. in
 secondary seq. governed by ἔχοιεν, which
 must mean 'know' or 'hold in mind'
 οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρῖσοφον: those...;
 prepositional phrase in attributive position
 ἀπήσαν: 3p impf. ἀπέρχομαι

ἐκ τῆς βοθηείας· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων 1
 τὰς τάξεις ἡνίκα ἀπὸ τῆς βοθηείας ἀπήντησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες
 ἔλεγεν· 5. ‘ὄρατε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ὑφίεντας τὴν χώραν
 ἤδη ἡμετέραν εἶναι; ἃ γὰρ ὅτε ἐσπέndonτο διεπράττοντο, μὴ
 καίειν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν, νῦν αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὡς ἀλλοτρίαν. 5
 ἀλλ’ ἐάν που καταλείπωσί γε αὐτοῖς ἐπιτήδεια, ὄψονται καὶ
 ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα πορευομένους.’ 6. ‘ἀλλ’, ὦ Χειρίσοφε,’ ἔφη, ‘δοκεῖ
 μοι βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμετέρας.’ ὁ δὲ
 Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· ‘οὔκουν ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμεῖς,’ ἔφη,

ἀλλότριος, -η, -ο: another’s, of another, 2

ἀπ-αντάω: to come or go from, 1

βοθηεία, ἡ: help, assistance, 2

βοθηέω: to come to aid, to assist, aid, 2

δια-πράττω: to accomplish, bring about, 1

ἐάν: εἰ ἄν, if (+ subj.), 3

ἔγωγε: I, for my part, 4

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 7

ἡνίκα: at which time, when, since, 6

καίω: to light up, burn, 6

κατα-βαίνω: to step, come down, 5

κατα-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 5

ὅτε: when, at some time, 7

οὔκ-ουν: certainly not, not therefore, 1

παρ-ελαύνω: march, ride, or drive along, 2

που: anywhere, somewhere; I suppose, 3

σπέndonω: to make a treaty, a drink-offering, 2

ὑπὲρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over,

beyond (acc.), 5

ὑφ-ίημι: to send under, submit, give up, 3

1 ἐκ τῆς βοθηείας: *from (giving) help*; or
 ‘from the rescue’ i.e. they had helped those
 Greeks plundering and were now returning

κατέβη: 3s aor. καταβαίνω

2 τὰς τάξεις: i.e. the οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ
 Χειρίσοφον. returning from plunder
 ἀπὸ τῆς βοθηείας: *from (giving) help*; or
 ‘from the rescue’

3 ἔλεγεν: *began to...*; inchoative impf.

ὑφίεντας: *(the enemy) submitting*; acc. sg.
 pres. pple

τὴν χώραν...εἶναι: *that...*; ind. disc.

4 (ἐκεῖνα) ἃ γὰρ...διεπράττοντο: *(as for
 those things) which...*; i.e. stipulations in
 negotiations; the Persians are subject;
 the missing antecedent is acc. of respect:
 ‘in result to...’ or ‘as for...’

ὅτε ἐσπέndonτο: the Persians are again
 subject

μὴ (ἡμᾶς)...χώραν: *(namely) that (we) not
 ...*; in apposition to the relative clause
 above; μὴ is used instead of οὐ with inf.

expressing a wish or command

5 αὐτοὶ: intensive; i.e. the enemy

καίουσιν: supply τὴν βασιλέως χώραν as
 object

ὡς ἀλλοτρίαν (χώραν): *as if...*;

conditional clause of comparison

6 ἐάν καταλείπωσί, ὄψονται: *if...*; future
 more vivid condition (ἐάν+ subj. fut.); fut.
 mid. ὄράω

γε: *at any rate*

αὐτοῖς: *for...*; ἐαυτοῖς reflexive and dat.
 of interest

καί: *also*

7 ἐνταῦθα: *there, to that spot*

ἀλλὰ: *well*; not an adversative but adding a
 further point

8 ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας: *against those...*

ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμετέρας (χώρας): *as if...*;

conditional clause of comparison

9 καί: *also*

‘καίωμεν, καὶ οὕτω θᾶπτον παύσονται.’

10

7. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν, στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ συνῆσαν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ ἀπορία ἦν. ἔνθεν μὲν γὰρ ὄρη ἦν ὑπερ-
ύψηλα, ἔνθεν δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος βάθος ὡς μηδὲ τὰ
δόρατα ὑπερέχειν πειρωμένοις τοῦ βάθους. 8. ἀπορουμένοις
δ' αὐτοῖς προσελθὼν τις ἀνὴρ Ῥόδιος εἶπεν· ‘ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ
ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ τετρακισχιλίους ὀπλίτας, ἂν
ἐμοὶ ὦν δέομαι ὑπηρετήσητε καὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν πορίσητε.’

15

ἀ-πορέω: to be at a loss, be bewildered, 1
ἀ-πορία, ἡ: difficulty, bewilderment, 5
βάθος, τό: depth, 2
δια-βιβάζω: to carry over, transport, 2
δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: spearshaft; pole, stem, 1
ἐνθεν: from there, on one side; from where, 3
θάπτων, θᾶπτον: faster, quicker, swifter, 1
καίω: to light up, burn, 6
μηδέ: and not, but not, nor, 3
μισθός, ὁ: fee, wages, pay, 1
ὀπλίτης, -ου ὁ: hoplite, armed soldier, 5
παύω: to stop, make cease, 3

10 καίωμεν: *let...*; 1p hortatory subj.

θᾶπτον: comparative adv.

παύσονται: the Persians are the subject

11 ἦλθον: aor. ἔρχομαι

12 συνῆσαν: impf. συνέρχομαι

13 ἦν: *there was*

ἐνθεν μὲν...ἐνθεν δὲ: *on one side...on the other side...*

ὄρη: ὄρε-α, neut. pl. subject ὄρος

14 ὡς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα ὑπερέχειν: *so that not even...; neg. result clause (ὡς + inf.); τὰ δόρατα is acc. subject.; i.e. deeper than the δόρατα*

15 πειρωμένοις: *for (those)...*; dat. of interest pple + gen. obj.

ἀπορουμένοις...αὐτοῖς: *to them...*; dat.

πορίζω: to provide, furnish, carry, 3

προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 6

Ῥόδιος, -α, -ον: Rhodian, of Rhodes, 5

σκηνή, ἡ: tent, 3

τάλαντον, τό: talent (equiv. to 57.75 lbs.), 1

τετρα-κισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α: four thousand, 2

τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: so great, so much, so many, 7

ὑπερ-έχω: to hold over, reach above, 1

ὑπερ-ύψηλος, -η, -ον: very high, very lofty, 2

ὑπηρετέω: to serve, do service (dat.), 1

of compound verb and ind. obj.; mid. pple

16 εἶπεν: aor. λέγω

θέλω: ἐθέλω

17 διαβιβάσαι: aor. inf.

κατὰ...: *...at a time*; distributive in sense: ‘4000 hoplites by 4000 hoplites’

ἂν...ὑπηρετήσητε...πορίσητε: *if you...; ἂν = εἰαν + 2p aor. subj.*

ὑπηρετήσητε: *you do (acc.) as a service to (dat)*

18 ὦν δέομαι: *what...;(ταῦτα) ὦν, ‘(that) which,’ the relative pronoun is gen. of separation and the missing antecedent is obj. of ὑπηρετήσητε*

τάλαντον: i.e. of gold or silver

μισθόν: *as...*

9. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ὅτου δέοιτο, ἄσκων, ἔφη, ‘δισχιλίων δεήσομαι·
πολλὰ δ’ ὀρώ πρόβατα καὶ αἴγας καὶ βούς καὶ ὄνους, ἃ 20
ἀποδαρέντα καὶ φυσηθέντα ῥαδίως ἂν παρέχοι τὴν διάβασιν.
10. δεήσομαι δὲ καὶ τῶν δεσμῶν οἷς χρήσθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια·
τούτοις ζεύξας τοὺς ἄσκους πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὀρμίσας ἕκαστον
ἄσκον λίθους ἀρτήσας καὶ ἀφείς ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ,
διαγαγῶν καὶ ἀμφοτέρωθεν δήσας ἐπιβαλῶ ὕλην καὶ γῆν 25

ἄγκυρα, ἡ: anchor, 1
αἶξ, αἴγος, ὁ, ἡ: goat, 1
ἀλλήλων: one another, 4
ἀμφοτέρω-θεν: from both sides, 2
ἀπο-δέρω: to flay, skin completely, 1
ἀρτέω: to fasten on, 1
ἄσκος, ὁ: a leathern-bag, a wine-skin, 4
ἀφ-ίημι: send away, let loose; give up, 1
βούς, ὁ, ἡ: ox, bull, cow; cattle, 1
γῆ, ἡ: earth, 4
δεσμός, ὁ: binding, bond, fetter, 1
σ
δι-άγω: lead across; pass life; delay, 3
διά-βασις, -εως, ἡ: a (means of) crossing, 3
δισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α: two thousand, 1

ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 6
ἐπι-βάλλω: to shoot at, cast at, 1
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 3
ζεύγνυμι: to join, unite, yoke, 1
λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 3
ὄνος, ὁ, ἡ: mule, 1
ὀρμίζω: to anchor, moor, 1
παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 7
πρό-βατα, τά: sheep, flocks, 1
ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 2
ὑδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 1
ὕλη, ἡ: woods, forest-tree, brushwood, 2
ὑπο-ζύγιον, τό: a yoke-animal, ox, 2
φυσάω: to blow (up), puff up, 1

19 ἐρωτώμενος: pass. pple
ὅτου: *whatever...*; ‘(that) which’;
οὔτινος gen. of separation governed by
δέομαι + pres. opt. in an ind. question in
secondary seq.
ἄσκων δισχιλίων: gen. of separation obj.
of fut. δέομαι
ἃ: *which...*; relative clause
21 ἀποδαρέντα καὶ φυσηθέντα: aor. pass
pples
ἂν παρέχοι: *would...*; 3s potential opt.

22 καὶ: *also*
τῶν δεσμῶν: gen. of separation obj.
οἷς: *which...*; dat. of means obj. of 2p
pres. χράομαι
23 τούτοις: *with...*; dat. of means, δεσμοῖς
ζεύξας...ὀρμίσας: nom. sg. aor. pples
24 λίθους ἀρτήσας καὶ ἀφείς: *by...*; causal in
sense, nom. sg. aor. pples, ἀφ-ίημι
25 διαγαγῶν καὶ ἀμφοτέρωθεν δήσας: i.e.
of the river; aor. pples διάγω, δέω, ‘bind’
ἐπιβαλῶ: fut. (βαλε-)

ἐπιφορήσω· ^{11.} ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐ καταδύσεσθε αὐτίκα μάλα εἴσεσθε· ¹
 πᾶς γὰρ ἄσκός δὺ ἄνδρας ἔξει τοῦ μὴ καταδύναι. ^{12.} ὥστε δὲ
 μὴ ὀλισθάνειν ἢ ὕλη καὶ ἢ γῆ σχήσει· ἀκούσασι ταῦτα τοῖς
 στρατηγοῖς τὸ μὲν ἐνθύμημα χαρίεν ἐδόκει εἶναι, τὸ δ' ἔργον
 ἀδύνατον· ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ κωλύσοντες πέραν πολλοὶ ἵππεῖς, ⁵
 οἱ εὐθύς τοῖς πρώτοις οὐδὲν ἂν ἐπέτρεπον τούτων ποιεῖν.
^{13.} ἐνταῦθα τὴν μὲν ὑστεραίαν ὑπανεχώρουν εἰς τοῦμπαλιν [ἢ
 πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα] εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους κώμας, κατακαύσαντες
 ἔνθεν ἐξῆσαν· ὥστε οἱ πολέμοι οὐ προσήλαυνον, ἀλλὰ

ἀ-δυνατός, -ή, -όν: incapable, impossible, 1
 ἀ-καύστος, -ον: unburnt, not burned, 1
 ἄσκός, ὄ: a leathern-bag, a wine-skin, 4
 αὐτίκα: straightway, at once; presently, 3
 Βαβυλῶν, -ῶνος, ἡ: Babylon, 2
 γῆ, ἡ: earth, 4
 ἔμπαλιν: back, backwards 1
 ἐν-θύμημα, ατος τό: throught, idea, 1
 ἔνθεν: from there, on one side; from where, 3
 ἐξ-έρχομαι: to go out, come out, 2
 ἐπι-τρέπω: to permit, allow, entrust (dat), 2
 ἐπι-φορέω: to put upon, pile on, 1
 ἔργον, τό: work, labor, deed, act, 4

εὐθύς: right away, straight, directly, at once 7
 κατα-δύω: to go down, sink, set, 2
 κατα-καίω: to burn up, 2
 κωλύω: to hinder or prevent, 1
 μάλα: very (much), quite, exceedingly, 5
 ὀλισθάνω: to slip, 1
 πέραν: beyond, exceeding (gen), 2
 προσ-ελαύνω: to drive to, ride to, 2
 ὕλη, ἡ: woods, forest-tree, brushwood, 2
 ὑπ-ανα-χωρέω: to withdraw slowly, 1
 ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον: the next day; later, 4
 χαρίεις, -εν: elegant, graceful; clever, 1

- 1 ὅτι...καταδύσεσθε: *that...*; ind. disc.
 οὖν: *then, accordingly*; inferential
 εἴσεσθε: 2p fut. mid. οἶδα
 2 ἔξει: *will keep*; fut. ἔχω
 τοῦ μὴ καταδύναι: *from sinking*; gen. of
 separation and aor. articular inf.: translate
 as a gerund (-ing); after a verb of
 preventing or denying, an articular inf. may
 govern a redundant μὴ (S2739), which
 confirms the negative idea in the leading
 verb but is left untranslated
 ὥστε δὲ μὴ ὀλισθάνειν: *from slipping*;
 'and so as not to slip,' a neg. result clause;
 ὥστε + inf. denotes a possible (not actual)
 result and governs μὴ when negative
 (S2260)
 3 σχήσει (ἄνδρας): *will keep (the men)*; fut.
 ἔχω (the fut. of ἔχω is ἔξω or σχήσω)
 ἀκούσασι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς: *to*
the...; dat. pl. of reference and aor. ppl

- 4 τὸ δ' ἔργον (ἐδόκει εἶναι): *but...*; ellipsis
 5 ἦσαν: *there were*
 οἱ κωλύσοντες: *those intending to...*; fut.
 ppl expressing purpose; πέραν πολλοὶ
 ἵππεῖς is in apposition
 πέραν: *exceedingly*; adv.
 6 οἱ: *who...*; relative clause
 τοῖς πρώτοις: i.e. the first Greeks to arrive
 to the bank of the river
 ἂν ἐπέτρεπον: *would...*; ἂν + 3p impf. ind.
 is contrary to fact (elsewhere called present
 unrealized potential); the enemy is subject
 οὐδὲν...τούτων: acc. obj. and partitive
 gen.; i.e. the plans discussed above
 7 τὴν μὲν ὑστεραίαν (ἡμέραν): acc. duration
 εἰς τοῦμπαλιν: backward; 'to the back'
 τὸ ἔμπαλιν.
 [ἢ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα]: omit
 8 ἔνθεν: *(the village) from where*; relative
 ἐξῆσαν: impf. ἐξέρχομαι

ἔθεῶντο καὶ ὅμοιοι ἦσαν †θαυμάζειν† ὅποι ποτὲ τρέφονται 10
οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ἐν νῶ ἔχοιεν. 14. ἐνταῦθα οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι
στρατιῶται ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ πάλιν
συνῆλθον, καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐαλωκότας ἤλεγχον τὴν
κύκλω πᾶσαν χώραν τίς ἐκάστη εἶη. 15. οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι τὰ
πρὸς μεσημβρίαν τῆς ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα εἶη καὶ Μηδίαν, δι' 15
ἣσπερ ἦκοιεν, ἣ δὲ πρὸς ἕω ἐπὶ Σοῦσά τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα
φέροι, ἔνθα θερίζειν λέγεται βασιλεύς, ἣ δὲ διαβάντι τὸν
ποταμὸν πρὸς ἑσπέραν ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ Ἰωνίαν φέροι, ἣ δὲ

ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, seized, 4
Βαβυλῶν, -ῶνος, ἡ: Babylon, 2
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 6
Ἐκβάτανα, τό: Ecbatana, 1
ἐλέγχω: to question, interrogate, examine, 1
ἐνθα: here, there, where, 6
ἑσπέρα, ἡ: evening; west, 2
ἕως (ἡώς): dawn; east, 1
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 2
θερίζω: to harvest; spend the summer, 1
θέομαι: to gave, watch, 1
Ἰωνία, ἡ: Ionia, 1
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 4

Λυδία, ἡ: Lydia, 4
μεσημβρία, ἡ: noon, mid-day; south, 1
Μηδία, ἡ: Media, 1
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, perception, heart, 2
ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling, similar, 1
ὅποι: to where, 3
ὄσπερ, ἦπερ, ὅπερ: very one who, which, 5
ποτέ: ever, at some time, once, 4
Σοῦσα, τά: Sousa, 1
συν-άγω: bring together, collect, gather, 1
τρέπω: to turn, change, 3
φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, convey, 7

ἀλλὰ: *rather, ...*; ‘but rather’ as often following a negative clause
10 ἔθεῶντο: impf. mid.
ὅμοιοι ἦσαν †θαυμάζειν†: *they seemed to wonder*; ‘were like to wonder,’ The obelus † indicates that the intervening word is corrupt but the editor is not sure how to emend it.
ποτέ: *in the world*; emphasizing the indefiniteness of the ind. question
11 τί ἐν νῶ ἔχοιεν: *what...;* Xenophon goes from primary seq. in the first ind. question to secondary seq. with 3p opt. here
νῶ: dat. νοῦς
12 ἦσαν: 3p impf. ἔρχομαι
συνῆλθον: aor. συνέρχομαι
13 ἐαλωκότας: pf. act. pple ἀλίσκομαι (aor. ἐάλων)
ἤλεγχον: impf. ἐλέγχω
τὴν κύκλω πᾶσαν χώραν τίς ἐκάστη εἶη: *about...what...;* the acc. obj. is used

proleptically (in anticipation) and should be translated as subject of the ind. question: ‘what was each (and) every...’; 3s opt. εἶμ in an ind. question in secondary seq.
14 κύκλω: *in the (area) around*; adverbial
οἱ δὲ: *and they*; i.e. the captives
τὰ πρὸς μεσημβρίαν: *those (regions)...*;
15 τῆς (ὁδοῦ) ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα εἶη καὶ Μηδίαν: *belonged to the road to...;* ‘are of the road’ gen. poss. predicate with opt. εἶμ in ind. disc. in secondary seq.
δι’ ἣσπερ ἦκοιεν: *through the very one which...;* 3p opt. for ind. in secondary seq.
16 ἣ δὲ (ὁδός) πρὸς ἕω... φέροι: *the (road)...* i.e. leads; opt. in ind. disc., secondary seq.
17 ἣ δὲ (ὁδός): *the (road)*
διαβάντι τὸν ποταμὸν: *for (one)...*; aor. pple διαβαίνω and dat. of interest
18 ἣ δὲ (ὁδός): *the (road)*

διὰ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ πρὸς ἄρκτον τετραμμένη ὅτι εἰς Καρδούχους
 ἄγοι. 16. τούτους δὲ ἔφασαν οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη καὶ πολεμικούς 20
 εἶναι, καὶ βασιλέως οὐκ ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμβαλεῖν ποτε εἰς
 αὐτοὺς βασιλικὴν στρατιὰν δώδεκα μυριάδας· τούτων δ' οὐδέν'
 ἀπονοστήσαι διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν. ὁπότε μέντοι πρὸς τὸν
 σατράπην τὸν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ σπείσαιντο, καὶ ἐπιμηνύναι σφῶν
 τε πρὸς ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων πρὸς ἑαυτούς. 17. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα 25

ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 7
 ἀνά: up, upon, up to, 2
 ἀπο-νοστήω: to return, come home, 1
 ἄρκτος, ὄ: bear; Ursa Major (north), 1
 βασιλικός, -ή, -όν: royal, of the king, 1
 δυσ-χωρία, ή: rough or difficult ground, 1
 δώ-δεκα: twelve, 1
 ἐμ-βάλλω: attack, fall upon; throw in, 3
 ἐπι-μηνύμι: mix with, have dealings with, 1
 Καρδοῦχοι, οἱ: Karduchians, 2

μυριάς, -άδος, ή: 10,000; myriad, countless 1
 οἰκέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 5
 πολεμικός, -ή, -όν: warlike, of war; war, 3
 ποτέ: ever, at some time, once, 4
 σατράπης, ὄ: satrap, 1
 σπένδω: to make a treaty, a drink-offering, 2
 στρατία, ή: army, expedition, land force, 4
 σφεῖς: they, 1
 τρέπω: to turn, change, 3

19 τετραμμένη: pf. mid. pple τρέπω
 ὅτι: repeated for emphasis: omit in translation
 20 ἄγοι: leads...; opt. for ind. in ind. disc. secondary seq.
 τούτους...οἰκεῖν...: that these...; i.e. the Karduchians (modern Kurds); ind. disc.
 ἔφασαν: impf. φημί
 ὄρη: ὄρε-α, neut. pl. subject ὄρος
 21 βασιλέως οὐκ ἀκούειν: gen. of source and obj. of ἀκούειν, which here means 'heed' or 'listen to and obey'
 καί: in fact, actually; adv.
 ἐμβαλεῖν... βασιλικὴν στρατιὰν: that...; ind. disc.: στρατιὰν is acc. subj.
 ποτε: once
 εἰς αὐτούς: against...

22 δώδεκα μυριάδας: appositive gen.
 τούτων δ' οὐδέν(α): but that no one...; partitive gen. and acc. subj.; aor. act. inf.
 23 ὁπότε...σπείσαιντο: whenever...; + aor. mid. opt.: past general temporal clause in ind. disc. in secondary seq.
 τὸν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ: attributive position modifying τὸν σατράπην
 24 καὶ ἐπιμηνύναι (τινας) σφῶν τε πρὸς ἐκείνους καὶ (τινας) ἐκείνων πρὸς ἑαυτούς: (some) of them also had dealings with those (Karduchians) and some of those (Karduchians) had dealings with themselves (i.e. the speakers); ind. disc. still governed by ἔφασαν; supply indefinite τινας as acc. subject

οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκάθισαν χωρὶς τοὺς ἑκασταχόσε φάσκοντας 1
 εἰδέναι, οὐδὲν δῆλον ποιήσαντες ὅποι πορεύεσθαι ἔμελλον.
 ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι διὰ τῶν ὁρέων εἰς
 Καρδούχους ἐμβαλεῖν· τούτους γὰρ διελθόντας ἔφασαν εἰς
 Ἀρμενίαν ἦξειν, ἧς Ὀρόντας ἦρχε πολλῆς καὶ εὐδαίμονος. 5
 ἐντεῦθεν δ' εὐπορον ἔφασαν εἶναι ὅποι τις ἐθέλοι πορεύεσθαι.
 18. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύσαντο, ὅπως ἡνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς ὥρας τὴν
 πορείαν ποιοῖντο· τὴν γὰρ ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὁρέων ἐδεδοίκεσαν
 μὴ προκαταληφθεῖη· καὶ παρήγγειλαν, ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν,

ἀναγκαῖος, -η, -ον: necessary, inevitable, 2
 Ἀρμενία, ἧ: Armenia, 1
 δεῖδω: to fear, 4
 δειπνέω: to dine, have dinner, 1
 δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 5
 δι-έρχομαι: to go through, pass, 3
 ἑκαστα-χόσε: to each side, 1
 ἐμ-βάλλω: attack, fall upon; throw in, 3
 ἐντεῦθεν: from here, from there, 5
 εὐ-δαίμων, -ον: happy, fortunate, blessed, 3
 εὐ-πορος, -ον: easy to pass, 1
 ἦκω: to have come, be present, 5
 ἡνίκα: at which time, when, since, 6

καθ-ίζω: to sit down, set down, 1
 Καρδοῦχοι, οἱ: Carduchians, 2
 μέλλω: to be about to, intend to; delay, 7
 ὅποι: to where, 3
 Ὀρόντας, ὄ: Orontas, 2
 παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 4
 πορεία, ἧ: march, journey, way, 5
 προ-κατα-λαμβάνω: to seize beforehand, 2
 ὑπερ-βολή, ἧ: crossing (over); mt. pass, 1
 φάσκω: claim; say, speak, 1
 χωρὶς: separately; apart from, without (gen) 1
 ὥρα, ἧ: season, time, period of time, 4

- 1 ἐκάθισαν χωρὶς: *set apart*; + acc. obj.;
 the στρατηγοὶ want to discuss in private
 τοὺς...φάσκοντας: *those...*; i.e. the
 captives who just explained the area
 ἑκασταχόσε...εἰδέναι: *that (they) knew
 (the way) in every direction*; ind disc.
- 2 ποιήσαντες: + a double acc. (obj., pred.)
 ὅποι...ἔμελλον: οἱ στρατηγοὶ are subject
- 3 ὁρέων: gen. pl. ὄρος
 εἰς: *against...*
- 4 τούτους...ἦξειν: *that these (Greeks)...*;
 ind. disc. with fut. inf.
 διελθόντας: aor. pple. διέρχομαι
 ἔφασαν: *(the captives) said*; this is the
 explanation for the previous clause
 εἰς: *into*
- 5 ἧς: *which...*; relative and gen. obj. of ἦρχε
 πολλῆς καὶ εὐδαίμονος: in apposition
- 6 ὅποι τις ἐθέλοι πορεύεσθαι: *to wherever...*
 general relative clause with 3s opt. in ind.

- disc. in secondary seq.
- 7 ἐπὶ τούτοις: *in addition to...*; + aor. θύω
 ὅπως...ποιοῖντο: *so that they might...*;
 purpose with opt. mid. in secondary seq.
 ἡνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς ὥρας: *at whatever
 point of time...*; partitive gen.; general
 temporal clause with 3s opt. δοκεῖ
 - 8 τὴν γὰρ ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὁρέων: used
 proleptically (in anticipation) and should be
 translated as subject of the fearing clause
 ἐδεδοίκεσαν: *they were afraid, they feared*;
 plpf. act. δεῖδω denotes a state, not
 activity: 'had come to fear and still were...'
 - 9 μὴ προκαταληφθεῖη: *lest...*; fearing with
 aor. pass. opt.; the subject is ὑπερβολὴ
 παρήγγειλαν: 3p aor. ind. παρήγγειλαν
 ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν: *that after...*; ind.
 disc., 3p aor. opt. replacing aor. ind. in
 secondary seq.

συσκευασαμένους πάντας ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἔπεσθαι ἡνίκ' ἂν 10
 τις παραγγέλλῃ.

ἀνα-παύω: to stop, make cease; *mid.*, rest, 3
 ἡνίκα: at which time, when, since, 6

παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 4
 συσκευάζομαι: pack up (gear), prepare, 2

10 συσκευασαμένους: aor. *mid.*
 ἀναπαύεσθαι: *rest*

ἡνίκ' ἂν τις παραγγέλλῃ.: whenever...;
 general temporal clause with ἂν + subj.

Xenophon's *Anabasis* Book III: Alphabetized Core Vocabulary List

The following is an alphabetized list of all words that occur eight or more times in Xenophon's *Anabasis* Book III. This list complements a running vocabulary list of the same words in the introduction. The number of occurrences, indicated at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author.

- ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good, brave, capable, 16
αἰρέω: seize, take; *mid.* choose, 9
ἀκούω: to hear, listen to, 14
ἀλλά: but, yet, 48
ἄλλος, -η, -ο: other, one...another, 40
ἅμα: at the same time; along with (+ dat.), 8
ἀν-ίστημι: to make stand up, raise; rise, 8
ἄν: modal adv., 52
άνήρ, άνδρός, ό: a man, 31
άνθρωπος, ό: human being, person, 8
άντί: instead of, in place of (+ gen.), 8
ἀπ-έρχομαι: to go away, depart, 16
ἀπο-θνήσκω: to die off, perish, 10
ἀπό: from, away from. (+ gen.), 19
ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 18
αὐτός, -ή, -ό: -self; he, she, it; the same, 106
βάρβαρος, -α, -ον: foreigner, barbarian, 16
βασιλεύς, ό: a king, chief, 29
βούλομαι: to wish, be willing, desire, 13
γάρ for since 73
γε: at least at any rate; indeed 13
γίγνομαι: to come to be, become, be born, 28
γιγνώσκω: to come to know, learn, realize, 8
δέ but and on the other hand 286
δεῖ: it is necessary, must, ought (+ inf.), 14
δέομαι: to be lacking, want of, need (gen), 9
δή: indeed, surely, really, certainly, just, 17
δια-βαίνω: to walk or pass over; cross 11
διά: through (+gen) on account of (+ acc), 13
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 8
διώκω: to pursue, follow; prosecute, 17
δοκέω: to seem (good), think, imagine, 39
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 28
δύο: two, 11
ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: himself, her-, it-, thems-, 10
ἐγώ: I, 16

- ἐθέλω (θέλω):** to be willing, wish, desire, 9
εἰ: if, whether, 45
εἶδον: aor. of ὁράω, to see, behold, 10
εἰμί: to be, exist, 165
εἶπον: aor., said, spoke, 16
εἰς (ἐς): into, to, in regard to (+ acc.), 42
εἷς, μία, ἓν: one, single, alone, 8
ἐκ, ἐξ: out of, from (+ gen.), 26
ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 12
Ἕλλην, Ἕλληνος, ὁ: Greek, Hellen, 35
ἐν: in, on, among. (+ dat.), 50
ἐνταῦθα: then, here, hither, there, thither, 13
ἐπεὶ: when, after, since, because, 36
ἐπειδή: when, since, after, 9
ἐπί: near (gen.), to, toward (acc.); near, at, 66
ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand 10
ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: suitable; provisions, 11
ἔπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἔρχομαι: to come or go, 28
ἔτι: still, besides, further, 14
ἔχω: have, possess; be able; be disposed, 45
ἢ: or (either...or); than, 23
ἡγέομαι: to lead; consider, believe (dat) 8
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 13
ἡμεῖς: we, 77
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 15
ἤν: if ever, **ἐάν,** 18
θεός, ὁ: a god, divinity, 28
θύω: to sacrifice, 8
ἵππεύς, ὁ: a horseman, cavalry, 20
ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, 15
ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as, like, 8
καί: and, also, even, too, 365
κακός, -ή, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 10
καλός, -ή, -όν: beautiful, noble; *adv.* well, 19
κατα-λαμβάνω: to seize, lay hold of, find, 10
κατά: down from (gen), down (along) (acc) 12
κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 10
Κῦρος, ὁ: Cyrus, 17
κώμη, ἡ: town, country town, 15
λαμβάνω: to take, receive, catch, grasp, 15
λέγω: to say, speak; gather, 36
λοχαγός, ὁ: captain, head of a λόχος, 19
μᾶλλον: more, rather, 8

- μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα:** big, great, important 11
μέν: on the one hand, 115
μέντοι: however, nevertheless; certainly, 9
μένω: to stay, remain; wait for, 10
μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 10
μή: not, lest, 32
νικάω: to conquer, defeat, win, 9
νομίζω: to believe, think, deem, 11
νῦν: now; as it is, 28
νύξ, νυκτος, ἡ: a night, 10
Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος, ὁ: Xenophon, 25
Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος, ὁ: Xenophon, 25
ὁ, ἡ, τό: the, 782
ὁδός, ἡ: road, way, path, journey, 12
οἶδα: to know, 11
οἶομαι: to suppose, think, imagine, 9
ὀλίγος -η, -ον: few, little, small, 8
ὄπλον, τό: a tool, implement; arms, 11
ὀπότε: when, by what time, 10
ὅπως: how, in what way; so that, 9
ὁράω: to see, look, behold, 32
ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill, 12
ὅς, ἡ, ὅ: who, which, that, 58
ὅσος, -η, -ον: as many as; all who or which 14
ὅστις, ἡτις, ὅ τι: whoever, which- whatever 12
ὅτι: that; because, 48
οὔτε: and not, neither...nor, 23
οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ: not, 51
οὐδ-εις, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν: no one, nothing, 30
οὐδέ: and not, but not, nor, not even, 15
οὐδέ: and not, but not, nor, not even, 15
οὖν: and so, then; at all events, 19
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο: this, these, 130
οὕτως: in this way, thus, so, 13
πάλιν: again, once more; back, backwards, 1πειρπε1
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: every, all, the whole, 33
πάσχω: to suffer, experience, 12
πεδῖον, τό: plain, 9
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 10
περί: around, about, concerning, 12
Πέρσης, -ου, ὁ: a Persian, 9
πλαίσιον, τό: rectangle, 8
ποιέω: to do, make, create, compose, 27
πολέμιος, -α, -ον: hostile; *subst.* enemy, 46

- πόλεμος, ὁ:** battle, fight, war, 10
πόλις, ἡ: a city, 10
πολύς, πολλά, πολύ: much, many, 59
πορεύομαι: to travel, journey, march, 34
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 10
πρός: to (acc.), near, in addition to (dat.), 34
πρόσθεν: before, 12
πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first, earliest, 13
σπενδονάω: to throw from a sling, 9
σπονδή, ἡ: a drink-offering; truce, treaty, 8
στράτευμα, τό: army, expedition, 13
στρατηγός, ὁ: general, 26
στρατιώτης, -ου, ὁ: soldier, 15
σύ: you, 9
συν-έρχομαι: come together, meet in battle 8
σύν: along with, with, together (+ gen.), 27
σώζω: to save, keep, preserve, 8
τάξις, -εως, ἡ: unit, division, rank; post, 8
ταχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: quick, swift, hastily, 12
τε: both, and, 33
τίς, τί: who? which?, 18
τις, τι: anyone, anything, someone, something, 44
Τισσαφέρνης, -ους, ὁ: Tissaphernes, 15
τοιοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: such, this sort, 8
τοξεύω: to shoot with the bow, 8
τυγχάνω: chance upon, get; meet; happen 13
ὑμεῖς: you, 39
ὑπό: by, because of, from (gen) under, 11
φαίνω: to show; *mid.* appear, seem, 8
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 9
φημί: to say, claim, assert, 22
Χειρίσοφος, ὁ: Cheirisophus, 14
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, indulge, 9
χώρα, ἡ: place; land, region, country, 11
ὦ: O! oh!, 18
ὥς: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 51
ὥσπερ: as, just as, as if, 8
ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 18